

## Lesson Plans—Second Class

### Contents

Introductions .....	5
Introductions .....	6
Parts of Speech.....	7
Present Tense Review .....	8
More Present Tense.....	10
Preterit Review.....	11
Present and Preterit—Yes/No Questions and Negation.....	13
Time .....	15
Time .....	17
Prepositions of Time.....	18
Question Words .....	20
Future Tense.....	22
Forming Questions.....	24
Questions/Future.....	26
Review .....	28
Jeopardy Review .....	30
Test.....	31
Body Parts.....	37
Body Parts.....	39
Describing People (Physical).....	41
Compound Sentence .....	43
Describing People 2 .....	44
Comparative and superlative.....	45
Describing People (Personality) .....	46
Describing People .....	47
Test Review .....	49
Test.....	50
Clothing.....	54
Clothing & Present Progressive.....	57
Progressives .....	60
Reading .....	61
Sickness/Health.....	63
Present Perfect .....	65
Present Perfect 2 .....	67
Present Perfect 3 .....	70
Present Perfect and Sickness.....	72
Past Perfect.....	73
Past Perfect 2.....	75
Perfect Tenses and Cause and Effect .....	76
Parts of Speech.....	79
<b>Parts of Speech 2</b> .....	80
Gerund.....	81
Gerunds 2 .....	83
Participles.....	85
<b>Gerunds and Participles</b> .....	86
Infinitives .....	87
Modals.....	88
Can/Could .....	88
Must/Have To .....	90
May/Might .....	91

Should/Ought To.....	92
Gerunds or Infinitives .....	93
Directions.....	95
Process-Directions .....	97
Weather .....	99
Prefixes and Suffixes .....	101
Forming Adjectives and Adverbs .....	102
Forming Nouns from Verbs.....	103
Cause and Effect .....	105
Fears and Bravery .....	107
Exercise and Sports.....	113
Travel .....	114
Restaurant .....	116
<b>Verb Chart</b> .....	117
Readings.....	121
New Student.....	121
Climate.....	122
Transcontinental Railroad.....	124
George Washington Carver.....	126
What Kids Say About Bullying .....	128
Dressed for Success?.....	130
Dress Code Letter .....	131
Drink up! .....	135
Stories .....	137
Little Red Riding Hood.....	137
Beauty and the Beast.....	139
Cinderella.....	141
The Frog Prince.....	143
The Princess and the Pea.....	145
The Tortoise and the Hare.....	145
The Boy Who Cried Wolf.....	145
Rumpelstiltskin .....	147
The Selfish Giant .....	149
Hansel and Gretel.....	151
Jack and the Beanstalk .....	155
The Ugly Duckling By Hans Christian Andersen.....	156
King Midas By Nathaniel Hawthorn .....	160
The Farmer and the Money Lender .....	166
The Fisherman and His Wife .....	168
Puss in Boots.....	174
The Elves and the Shoemaker.....	178
Snow White and the Seven Dwarves .....	179
The Little Red Hen.....	184
The Three Little Pigs .....	185
Songs.....	187
Today was a Fairytale .....	187
Rock Around the Clock .....	189
We Are the World.....	190
Brave .....	192
ABC .....	194
If Tomorrow Never Comes .....	196
A Spoonful of Sugar .....	198
Can you Feel the Love Tonight?.....	199
Circle of Life.....	200

Do-Ri-Me.....	201
Let's Go Fly a Kite .....	204
My Favorite Things.....	205
Sixteen Going on Seventeen .....	206
Supercalifragilisticexpialidocious.....	207
The Lion Sleeps Tonight.....	209
When You Wish Upon a Star.....	210
Let it Go .....	211
A Life That's Good.....	214
A Whole New World .....	215
Beautiful.....	216
Because You Loved Me.....	217
Bye, Bye, Bye .....	219
Change .....	221



## Introductions

- Agenda
  - Introductions
  - Class Rules
  - Grading
  - Field Trip
  - An Exercise (PC Pretest)
- Pass Around Sign in Sheet
- Introduce Myself
  - Emphasize I work for Peace Corps and will teach here for 2 years
- Student Introductions
  - What's your name?
  - Tell me 3 things about yourself.
    - They struggled to understand this.
    - How old are you?
    - Where do you live?
    - What do you like to eat?
- Make Name Tags
  - Hand each student a half a sheet of paper. Have them fold in half and write their name. Then, stand name tag in front of them.
- Class Rules
  - Be on time – être dans les délaisation
    - 5 minutes after class starts, don't come in
  - No phones—pas de telephones
  - No leaving during class
  - Ask questions—poser des questions
    - If you don't understand, tell me
  - Raise your hand—augmenter votre main
  - Have fun—amusez-vous
- Grading For First Trimester Grades--Notes
  - 12 points for 2 tests—examens
  - 4 points for a writing assignment—par écrit affect
  - 4 points for quizzes, attendance—présence—and participation—participation
- Office Hours
  - Tell students where they can find me outside of class and times I'll be there
- Field Trip
  - Show them my office
  - Show them library where Books from Africa are
  - Follow—suivre
- An Exercise
  - Give PC pretest.
- Collect exercise and name cards

## Introductions

- Reintroduce myself
- Take attendance
- Review rules
- Hand out name cards
- Create Passport
  - Hand each student a small square of paper. Have them write:
    1. Name—nom
    2. Age—âge
    3. Birthdate—date de naissance
    4. Nationality—nationalité
    5. Address—adresse (city or neighborhood)
    6. Occupation—occupation employ (Student)
    7. Destination—destination
      - Where do you want to travel (voyager)?
  - Have a large one prepared for myself to demonstrate
- Conversation with Travel Agent (agente de voyage)
  - Travel Agent: Hello. Where are you traveling today?
  - 2: I am traveling to \_\_\_7\_\_.
  - TA: May I see your passport, please?
  - 2: yes
  - TA: What nationality are you?
  - 2: I am \_\_\_4\_\_.
  - TA: Where do you live?
  - 2: I live in \_\_\_5\_\_ in Comoros.
  - TA: How old are you?
  - 2: I am \_\_\_2\_\_\_ years old.
  - TA: When è your birthday?
  - 2: My birthday è \_\_\_3\_\_\_.
  - TA: What do you do for a living?
  - 2: I'm a \_\_\_6\_\_.
  - TA: OK, good. Have a good trip.
  - 2: Thanks. Bye.
- Fillers
  - Divide into 2 teams. I say, you write
    - Numbers
    - Days of Week
    - Years
    - Months
    - Time

## Parts of Speech

### Parts of speech—partie du discours

- Nouns—nom
  - Person—personne
  - Place—lieu
  - Thing—choses
  - Answer what and who?
  - What are some examples?
- Adjectives—adjectif
  - Modify (modifier) nouns
  - Answer questions: Which one, what kind, how many?
  - Usually come before noun
    - EX: big car
  - What are some examples?
- Verb—verbe
  - Action—action
  - Trait—trait
  - EX: I eat food. I am a teacher
  - What are some examples?
- Adverb—adverbe
  - Modify verbs, adjectives, or other (autre) adverbs
  - Usually end in ly
  - Answer when, where, how, why?
  - EX: Very big car
- Preposition
  - Connects a word to a substantive
- Subject--sujet
  - What or who does action of sentence
- Forming Sentence
  - To form a sentence, need a subject and a verb
  - EX: I eat. Hadija is a student. Hakim walks to school. They study English.
- Identify Parts of speech
  - A baby walks slowly.
  - The hungry man eats quickly
- Conversation
  - Give groups of students conversation with certain words underlined or circled. They read through and identify what part of speech each word is.
  - Then, practice reading dialogue.
  - Hadija: Hi. How are you?
  - Zalhata: Fine, thanks. How are you?
  - Hadija: I am fine. My name è Hadija. What is your name?
  - Zalhata: My name è Zalhata.
  - Hadija: It's very nice to meet you.
  - Zalhata: You, too.
  - Hadija: where are you from?
  - Zalhata: I'm from Mde.
  - Hadija: Oh, I am from Moroni.
  - Zalhata: Cool. Well, I will see you later.
  - Hadija: Bye.

## Present Tense Review

- Agenda
  - Name Tags
  - Review
  - Vocabulary
  - Present Tense
  - Practice
  
- Name Tags
- Attendance Sign In
- Reintroduce Self
- Review Rules: What are our class rules?
  
- Vocabulary
  - Verbs:
    - To wake up—réveiller
    - To sleep—dormir
    - To get up—lever
    - To lie down—coucher
    - To rest—reposer
    - To take a nap—faire la sieste
    - To get ready—préparer
    - To get dressed—s’habiller
    - To bathe—se baigner
    - To shower—se doucher
    - To shave—se raser
    - To brush—se brosser
    - To wash—se laver
    - To iron—fer
    - To sweep—balayer
    - To cook—faire cuire
    - To eat—manger
    - To drink—boire
    - To read—lire
    - To learn—apprendre
    - To teach—enseigner
    - To study—étudier
    - To babysit—garder les enfants
    - To play—jouer
    - To watch TV—regarder la television
    - To pray—prier
    - To go (to)—aller (à)
    - To leave (for)—partir (pour)
    - To return (to)—revenir (à)
    - To spend time with friends—passer du temps avec des amis
    - To hang out with friends—passer du temps avec des amis
    - To dance—danser
    - To sing—chanter
    - To run—courir
    - To walk—marcher
    - To swim—nager
    - To buy—acheter



- To take a taxi—prendre un taxi
    - To drive—conduire
  - Adverbs
    - Everyday—quotidien
    - Always—toujours
    - Usually—habituellement
    - Sometimes—parfois
    - Rarely—rarement
    - Never—jamais
- I say, class repeats after me
- Practice Vocab
  - Who sleeps at night?
  - Who knows how to cook madaba?
  - Who knows how to drive?
  - Who likes to play soccer?
  - ...
- What are the subject pronouns
  - I
  - You
  - He/she/it
  - We
  - They
- Review Present Tense
  - When we talk about what we do everyday, we use present tense
  - To Form:
    - For 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular,
      - Add -s or -es to verb
        - Go → goes
        - Wash → washes
      - If word ends in a consonant followed by y, change the y to i and add es
        - Study → studies
    - For other pronouns, infinitive without to
- Form Sentence—Adverb Placement
  - Everyday, I brush my teeth (Begin and End)
  - We always pray. (b/w sub and verb)
  - He usually goes to school. (beg, mid)
  - You sometimes sing. (beg, mid, and end)
  - She rarely brushes her teeth. (b/w subj and verb)
  - He never cooks (b/w subj and verb)
  - \*\*Always use a comma if adverb begins sentence
- Practice:
  - Write 3-5 sentences (phrases) about what you do everyday.
  - Partner asks, “What do you do everyday.” Other partner answers with what they wrote.

## More Present Tense

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Adverbs

- Every \_\_\_\_\_ (Monday)
- On \_\_\_\_\_ (Mondays)
- Almost always
- Hardly ever
- Very rarely
- Almost never

### ➤ Forming Sentences

- Teach placement of these adverbs

### ➤ Practice in Groups

- Count off students 1-x to get groups of 4. Get in group.
- Give sheet of paper divided into 4 boxes with times of day written in each box (In the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, at night). Have 1, 2, 3, in each box.

In the Morning 1. 2. 3.	In the afternoon 1. 2. 3.
In the evening 1. 2. 3.	At night 1. 2. 3.

- In your group, write 3 sentences for things you do during each time of the day.
- Roll a dice to determine subject. (1=I, 2=you, 3=he, 4=she, 5=we, 6=they)
- Have each group share one sentence

## Preterit Review

- Agenda:
  - Conversation (as review)
  - Preterit Tense
  - Irregulars
  - Adverbs
- Review
  - Hadija: Fatima, what do you do everyday?
  - Fatima: Usually, I wake up and get dressed. Then, I always eat and brush my teeth.
  - Hadija: What do you do next (prochaine)?
  - Fatima: I usually go to school. After school, I return home, and I study. Sometimes, I take a nap.
  - Hadija: Oh! I never take a nap, but I usually rest in the afternoon.
  - Fatima: Oh, good. Well, see you tomorrow.
  - Hadija: Bye.
  - \*Find the adverbs. Stress that these adverbs usually indicate present tense.
- Vocabulary: Adverbs
  - Yesterday— hier
  - The day before yesterday—avant hier
  - Last \_\_\_\_\_ (night/week/month/year)-- dernier
  - \_\_\_\_\_ ago (1 day ago—un jour il ya=yesterday)—il ya
  - \*\*If begin sentence, use comma after
- Form Preterit
  - Preterit indicates action that started and ended in the past.
    - EX: Yesterday, I washed my clothes
  - To form:
    - For most verbs, add –ed
      - Brush→brushed
      - Dance→danced
    - If verb ends in a consonant followed by a y, change the y to I and add –ed.
      - Study→studied
    - Same form for all subject pronouns
- Irregulars
  - To wake up→woke up
  - To sleep→slept
  - To get→got
  - To lie down→lay down
  - To take→took
  - To sweep→swept
  - To eat→ate
  - To drink→drank
  - To read→read
  - To teach→taught
  - To sit→sat
  - To babysit→babysat
  - To go→went
  - To leave→left
  - To spend→spent
  - To hang→hung
  - To sing→sang
  - To run→ran
  - To swim→swam

- To buy→bought
- To drive→drove
- Practice Pronunciation
  - All together, then I randomly point and they say.
- Examples
  - Yesterday, I danced.
  - Two days ago, I went to school.
  - Ask for volunteers to make sentence
    - To swim
    - To read
    - To eat
- Practice
  - What did you do yesterday?
    - Write 3-5 sentences about what you did yesterday.
    - Partner asks, “What did you do yesterday?”
    - Share and then change
- Filler
  - Rewrite sentence in preterit
    - Susan helps her friends.
    - We go to the market.
    - He washes the car.
    - My father is in the kitchen.
    - She does not understand you.
    - You make delicious food.
    - Amina wears a red dress.
  - Today was a Fairytale.
    - Have students listen for preterit verbs. Slow song down.
    - [Song](#)
  - Nursery Rhyme—comptine
    - Hey diddle diddle,  
The cat (chat) and the fiddle (violon)  
The cow (vache) jumped over the moon (lune).  
The little dog (chien) laughed to see such sport (amusement)  
and the dish (plat) ran away with the spoon (cuillère).
    - \*\*explain sport has 2 menings—1. basketball, football and 2. Fun
    - To jump—sauter
    - To laugh—rire
    - To see—voir
  - There was an old woman who lived in a shoe. She had so many children, she did not know what to do. She gave them some broth without any bread and whipped them all soundly and put them to bed.
  - Write a story about an animal. Give your animal a name. Tell me what it did yesterday. It doesn't have to be true.

## Present and Preterit—Yes/No Questions and Negation

### ➤ Agenda:

- Review
- Negate sentence
- Yes/no questions

### ➤ Review—Present or Preterit \*Look at adverbs

- I \_\_\_\_ (to go) to the market everyday.
- She \_\_\_\_ (to run) to Mde last week.
- We usually \_\_\_\_ (to drive) to school.
- He \_\_\_\_ (to work) at a lycee everyday last month.
- Three days ago, they \_\_\_\_ (to sweep) the house.
- We rarely \_\_\_\_ (to watch) TV yesterday.
- She \_\_\_\_ (to babysit) her sister while she cooked.
- You \_\_\_\_ (to rest) after you finish class.
- \*\*Look at adverb—preterit wins
- \*\*Look at other verbs

### ➤ Practice

- Divide into groups of 4
- Give each student a card with infinitive verb and adverb indicating present or preterit
  - EX: To swim Last weekend
- Write 1 sentences using adverb and verb. (3 minutes to write)
- Change cards in group. Write 1 sentence with new card. (3 minutes to write)
- Share in group. Make sure used correct tense (3 minutes to share)
- Pick on a few students to share with class

### ➤ Negate Sentence

- Practice with To Dance

	Present	Preterit
I	Dance	Danced
You	Dance	Danced
He/she/it	Dances	Dances
We	Dance	Danced
They	Dance	danced

- Conjugate:
  - To do → did --faire
- To negate in Present tense:
  - Do not (don't) or does not (doesn't)
  - Go through in chart
- To negate in Preterit Tense
  - Did not (didn't) + infinitive without to
  - Did not dance
  - Go through in chart

	Present	Preterit
I	Don't Dance	Didn't dance
You	Don't Dance	Didn't dance
He/she/it	Doesn't Dances	Didn't dance
We	Don't Dance	Didn't dance
They	Don't Dance	Didn't dance

### ➤ Practice

- Change cards in group
- Write 2 negative sentences—1 in present and 1 in preterit. Ignore adverb.

- Share in group
- Ask some students to share. Write on board.
- For Yes/No Questions
  - Form questions for sentences from students from their practice
  - Do you play basketball
  - Did you eat madaba yesterday?
- Practice
  - Change cards
  - Write 2 questions with infinitive on card—1 in present, 1 in preterit. Ignore adverb.
  
- Filler
  - Hey Diddle Diddle
  - Tongue Twister
    - Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers.  
A peck of pickled peppers Peter Piper picked.  
If Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers,  
where's the peck of pickled peppers Peter Piper picked?
  - Present or Preterit
    - I usually \_\_\_\_\_ (to ride) my bike to school.
    - Last year, he \_\_\_\_\_ (to break) his arm.
    - We \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to Mde yesterday.
    - Everyday, they \_\_\_\_\_ (to learn) English.
    - She \_\_\_\_\_ (to wash) clothes every week.
    - I \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) a new dress two days ago.
    - I \_\_\_\_\_ (to be\_ happy, so I celebrated.
    - We rarely \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to school last week.
  - Branching Dialogue

Hakim: Hey, Hassane. Did you play basketball yesterday?	
Hassane: Yes, I played basketball yesterday.	Hassane: No, I did not play basketball yesterday.
Hakim: When did you play?	Hakim: What did you do?
Hassane: I played in the afternoon.	Hassane: I cooked madaba.
Hakim: Oh. Did you study afterwards?	
Hassane: Yes, I studied last night.	Hassane: No, I did not study yesterday.
Hakim: Good. Then what?	Hakim: Oh no. Why not?
Hassane: I watched TV.	
Hakim: Oh. I did not watch TV last night. I went to bed early.	
Hassane: Nice. Well, see you later.	
Hakim: Bye.	

○

## Time

\*\*Bring time matching cards.

### ➤ Agenda

- Review Numbers
- Vocabulary
- Practice
- Questions

### ➤ As students enter, ask students:

- Did you \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend?

### ➤ Review Numbers (20 minutes)

- Divide into 3 teams.
- Have random numbers 0-100 written on board.
- One student from each team comes to board. I call out number, first to circle number gets a point for his or her team.

### ➤ Vocabulary

- Time-temps
- Clock-pendule
- Second--seconde
- Minute--minute
- Hour--heure
- Day—jour
- Week
- Month
- Year

### ➤ Times

- \*draw clock on board to help describe
- XX:00 O'clock—heure juste
- XX:30 Half Past--demie
  - Explain half  $\frac{1}{2}$ . 60 minutes in 1 hour. Half is 30
- XX:15 Quarter after or Quarter Past—trimestre après
  - Explain quarter is  $\frac{1}{4}$ . 60 minutes in 1 hour.  $\frac{1}{4}$  is 15.
- XX:45 Quarter to (next hour)—trimestre de
- About--vers
- Just after—juste après
- Just before—juste avant
- Almost—presque

### ➤ Practice saying

- I write a time on board, they have to say it. Call on students

### ➤ Questions

- Questions asking about time start with What time or When
- What time is it?
  - It is \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do you have the time?
  - Yes, it is \_\_\_\_\_.
- Can you tell me what time it is?
  - It is \_\_\_\_\_.
- What time do you wake up?
- What time does English class start?

### ➤ Filler

- Matching game

- Have cards with times on them. Some have clock face time (12:30). Others have written time (half past twelve). Deal cards face down. On your turn, turn over 2 cards. If they match, you collect them. If not, turn them back over. Next person's turn. Repeat. One with most matches at end wins.
- Reading
  - I wake up everyday at 5:00. Then, I get dressed, eat breakfast, and brush my teeth. At a quarter to 7, I leave for work. I return to my house in Iconi at about 2:00. Then, I usually clean my room and bathroom. Sometimes, I take a nap. At a quarter to 3, I leave my house and go to the library to teach English. Usually, Sarah walks with me. Class starts at 3:00. It lasts for 2 hours. But today I have a meeting in Moroni at 3:15.
  - Questions:
    - What time do I go to work?
    - What time do I go to English class?
    - Who do I go to English class with?
    - When do I return home from work?
    - What time does English class finish?
    - Will I be at English class today?



## Time

\*\*Bring Board Game this week for students to play if come during office hours. 3 types of cards. has infinitive. Student must conjugate and spell correctly in preterit

-Preterit. Card

-Present or Preterit. Card has sentence. Student must decide if present or preterit in blank.

-Prepositions of Time. Student must decide if at, on, or in goes in blank.

### ➤ Agenda

- Review
- Vocabulary
- Practice
- Conversation

### ➤ Review-Match--assortir

11:45	Twelve o'clock
12:00	Quarter after 12
11:57	Half past 12 o'clock
12:15	Quarter to 12
12;30	Just after 12 o'clock
12;04	Almost 12 o'clock

### ➤ Vocabulary

- After
- Before
- Midnight-minuit
- Noon--midi
- a.m.—in the morning
- p.m.—in the afternoon, evening and at night
- Draw clock to help explain a.m and p.m.
- I wake up at 5:00 a.m.
- I wake up at 5:00 in the morning

### ➤ Practice with a partner

- One asks questions, other answers
  - What time do you wake up?
  - When do you leave for school?
  - When do you return home?
  - What time did you go to bed last night?
- As class, call on a few students and ask when does he/she do \_\_\_?

### ➤ Conversation

- Anna: Hey, Ali. What time do you wake up everyday?
- Ali: I always wake up at 4:45 a.m.
- Anna: Oh, I usually wake up at about 7:00 in the morning.
- Ali: Wow. At 7:00 a.m., I usually leave for school.
- Anna: I leave for school at just after 9:00 a.m.
- Ali: When do you return home?
- Anna: I return home at 6:30 p.m.
- Ali: Me, too!
- Anna: Oh, good. Let's study together at 7:00 p.m.

## Prepositions of Time

### ➤ Agenda

- Review
- Prepositions of Time
- Practice
- Conversation
- Quiz on Tuesday (10 ?s)

### ➤ Review-Review Ask students Questions. Ask each question to 2 or 3 different students

- What time did you wake up this morning?
- What time did you return home yesterday?
- When did you eat yesterday?
- When do you usually go to bed?
- What time do you study?
- What time do you usually finish school?

### ➤ Prepositions of Time

At	Hours	5:00, 4:30
On	Days Date	Monday October 2, 2015
In	Weeks Months Years Decade Century Minutes Time of Day	2 weeks July, August 2011, 1980 80s, 90s 21 <sup>st</sup> century 5 minutes morning, afternoon, evening  *exception: Night uses at

#### ○ Examples

- School starts at 7:30.
- School starts on September 25, 2015.
- Schools starts in 2 weeks.
- Schools starts in September.

### ➤ Practice

- \_\_\_\_\_ night
- \_\_\_\_\_ Thursday
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2:30 p.m.
- \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon
- \_\_\_\_\_ February 14<sup>th</sup>
- \_\_\_\_\_ night
- \_\_\_\_\_ June
- \_\_\_\_\_ Monday night
- \_\_\_\_\_ Eid
- \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend
- \_\_\_\_\_ the 1980s
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6 months
- \_\_\_\_\_ New Year's Day

### ➤ Conversation

- Noura: Hi, Sabrina. What's up?

- Sabrina: Nothing much. Hey, when is New Year's Day?
- Noura: New Year's Day is \_\_\_\_ 3 months, \_\_\_\_ January.
- Sabrina: What day is it \_\_\_\_?
- Noura: It is \_\_\_\_ Thursday.
- Sabrina: What date?
- Noura: New Year's Day is \_\_\_\_ January 1st.
- Sabrina: What do you do \_\_\_\_ New Year's Day?
- Noura: I always go to sleep \_\_\_\_ 2:00 \_\_\_\_ the morning. I usually wake up \_\_\_\_ the afternoon. \_\_\_\_ night, I visit friends and family.

- Quiz on Tuesday. Similar. You decide time preposition.
  - 10 questions

➤ Filler

- Conversation
  - Omar: What time is it?
  - Zach: It is almost 8:00.
  - Omar: What time does the basketball game start?
  - Zach: It starts at 3:15.
  - Omar: What time do you usually finish school?
  - Zach: I finish school at 1:45 everyday.
  - Omar: Great. Do you want to go to the basketball game after school?
  - Zach: Yes. I'll see you there.
- Nursery Rhyme
  - Hickory Dickory Dock  
The mouse ran up the clock  
The clock struck one,  
the mouse ran down,  
hickory dickory dock.
  - Mouse—souris
  - To strike—sonner
  - Up-- au dessus
  - Down—vers le bas
- Rock Around the Clock
  - [Song Lyrics](#)
- Conversation
  - Noura: Hi, Sabrina. What's up?
  - Sabrina: Nothing much. Hey, when is Eid-el-Kabir?
  - Noura: Eid-el-Kabir is \_\_\_\_ 3 weeks. \_\_\_\_ September.
  - Sabrina: What day is it \_\_\_\_?
  - Noura: It is \_\_\_\_ Thursday.
  - Sabrina: What date?
  - Noura: Eid-el-Kabir is \_\_\_\_ September 24<sup>th</sup>.
  - Sabrina: What do you do \_\_\_\_ Eid-el-Kabir?
  - Noura: I always wake up \_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_ the morning. \_\_\_\_ 6, I start to clean. \_\_\_\_ the afternoon, I cook. \_\_\_\_ night, I visit friends and family.

## Question Words

\*\*Bring board game this week. Game with 2 different cards.

--Present/Preterit/or Future. Student must fill in sentence blank with correct tense

--Question Word. Student must fill in blank with correct question word.

\*\*Need DICE

### ➤ Agenda

- Quiz
- Question Words
- Conversation
- Game

➤ As students enter, ask what did you do yesterday.

### ➤ Review-Quiz

- \_\_\_\_\_ March 5, 2016, John went to the mosque \_\_\_\_\_ night.
- I get up \_\_\_\_\_ 6:00 a.m. \_\_\_\_\_ Sundays.
- Eid is \_\_\_\_\_ 3 weeks, \_\_\_\_\_ June.
- \_\_\_\_\_ my birthday, I hung out with my friends.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2014, Omar finished school \_\_\_\_\_ 4:45 \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon.
  
- 1. \_\_\_\_\_ June, I go to school \_\_\_\_\_ 12:30 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ Tuesdays.
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 2013, Omar went to work \_\_\_\_\_ night.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ Independence Day, she woke up \_\_\_\_\_ 4:30 \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
- 4. School starts \_\_\_\_\_ 10 minutes.
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_ June 3, 1999, Anna learned to drive.
- **This is how your test will be. If difficult. Study.**

### ➤ Review Question Words

- Who--qui → person--personne
- What--que → objects or things—objets or choses
- When/what time--quand → time--temps
- Where-- où → place/location—lieu or emplacement
- Why--pourquoi → reason—raison
  - Because—parce que
  - In order to--afinde
  - So that—de sorte que

### ➤ Practice: Order the conversation

- Hakim: Hey, Hassane. Where do you live?
- Hassane: I live in Moroni.
- Hakim: Who do you live with?
- Hassane: I live with my mom, dad, brother, and sisters.
- Hakim: What do you do after school?
- Hassane: I usually play basketball with my friends.
- Hakim: When do you play?
- Hassane: At 3:15 p.m.
- Hakim: Did you study after you played basketball yesterday?
- Hassane: Yes, I did.
- Hakim: Why?
- Hassane: I studied because I have a test tomorrow.
- Hakim: Oh. Good luck! (bonne chance)
- Hassane: Thanks. Bye.

### ➤ Practice: Write the Question corresponding to the underlined word.

- I brushed my teeth at 5:45 a.m. today.

- I always
- I like to eat madaba because it tastes good.
- 

➤ Practice: Game

- Divide into groups of four.
- 1 person starts. Roll dice. Number you get determines category. Roll again to determine question number.

<p><b>1. &amp; 4. Personal</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Who gave you your name?</li> <li>2. What is your name?</li> <li>3. What time do you go to bed?</li> <li>4. Where do you study?</li> <li>5. Why do you pray?</li> <li>6. When is your birthday?</li> </ol>	<p><b>2. &amp; 5. Family</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Who do you live with?</li> <li>2. What is your mother's name?</li> <li>3. When do you spend time with your family?</li> <li>4. Where is your father from?</li> <li>5. What do you do to help your family? Why?</li> <li>6. Do you have any sisters?</li> </ol>	<p><b>3. &amp; 6. Future</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Who is your best friend at school?</li> <li>2. What do you want to study? Why?</li> <li>3. What time do you eat lunch?</li> <li>4. Where do you want to go to university?</li> <li>5. Why do you want to have children?</li> <li>6. Do you want to go to university?</li> </ol>
--	---	--

## Future Tense

\*\*Bring board game this week. Game with 2 different cards.

--Present/Preterit/or Future. Student must fill in sentence blank with correct tense

--Question Word. Student must fill in blank with correct question word.

### ➤ Agenda

- Vocabulary
- Future Tense
- Practice

### ➤ Vocabulary

- Verbs
  - To want--vouloir
  - To pass (the baccalaureate)--passer
  - To graduate--graduer
  - To apply (for a job/to university)--appliquer
  - To marry-- épouser
  - To get married-- épouser
  - To have a child/children (had)
  - To start a family
  - To move-- déménager
  - To travel--voyager
  - To build—construire (built)
  - To work--travailler
  - To retire—prendre se retraite
  - To visit—visiter
  - To think—penser (thought)
  - To expect--attendre
  - To hope--espérer
- Nouns
  - Free time—du temps libre
  - Dream--rêve
  - Goal--objectif
  - Job--emploi
- Adverbs
  - Tomorrow--demain
  - Next \_\_\_\_\_ (week/month/year)--prochaine
  - \_\_\_\_\_ from now
    - 1 day from now=tomorrow
  - In \_\_\_\_\_
    - In 1 day=tomorrow

### ➤ Form Future Tense

- Same for all subject pronouns
- Will + infinitive without to
- \*Sometimes shall. Formal. I and we
- EX: I will sing tomorrow.
- Next month, I will get married.
- In 2 years, I will pass the baccalaureate

### ➤ Negatives

- Will + Not+ infinitive without to
- I will not sing tomorrow. I won't sing tomorrow.
- Next month, I will not get married.

➤ Phrases

- I think I will
- Maybe I will
- I expect I will
- I hope I will
- I will probably (probablement)
- I will never

➤ Imagine (imaginer) your Future (futur)

- Try to use phrases above

Name _____
In 2 Years
In 6 Years:
In 15 Years:
In 40 Years:

- Share in group.
- Ask if any want to share to class.
- COLLECT

➤ Filler

- Form yes/no question
- Rewrite sentences in future tense
  - The girl goes to high school.
  - They practice their English.
  - We do not dance.
  - My dad started his job.
  - I do not go to school.
- You've been invited to America. Write your itinerary. What will you do?
  - Monday: \_\_\_\_\_, Tuesday: \_\_\_\_\_, Wednesday: \_\_\_\_\_, Thursday: \_\_\_\_\_, Friday: \_\_\_\_\_.
  - It's Wednesday. Write a postcard to your family. Tell them what you did and what you will do.

## Forming Questions

- Agenda
  - Reading
  - Sentence Structure
  - Form Questions
  - Practice
- Reading
  - Omar is a doctor at the hospital. He works every Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, and Thursday. Omar studied at university for many years to become a doctor. After he passed the Bac, he moved to Australia to go to university. He studied there for 6 years. After he graduated, he returned to Comoros to work with his friend Abdul.
  - Questions:
    - What does Omar do?
    - When does he not work?
    - Where did Omar go to university?
    - Why did he move to Australia?
    - Who does he work with?
- Sentence Structure
  - Subject (sujet)
    - What or who does action of sentence
    - He eats mangos.
    - Ask for examples with subject They, She, We
  - Verb (verbe)
    - Action or Trait
    - I eat food.
    - I am a teacher.
    - Ask for examples
  - To form a sentence, you need a subject and a verb.
    - I eat.
    - They go to school.
    - My friend plays football in the afternoons.
    - After school, Hadija babysits her sister and brother at home.
    - Sariyah always cooks good food.
  - Auxiliary Verbs
    - There are others, but we will start with these three:
    - Do/Does—present tense
    - Did-past tenses
    - Will/shall-future tense
- Forming Questions
  - Henry ate an apple at his house yesterday because he was hungry.
    - a.            b.            d.            c.            e.
  - A. Who
    - People
    - Who + verb + ...
    - Who ate an apple?
  - B. What
    - Objects/things
    - What + aux. verb + S + V (infinitive without to)
    - What did Henry eat ...?
  - C. When
    - Time
    - When + AV+ S +V (infinitive without to)...
    - When did Henry eat an apple?



- D. Where
  - Location/place
  - Where + AV+ S +V (infinitive without to)...
  - Where did Henry eat an apple?
- E. Why
  - Reason
  - Why + AV+ S +V (infinitive without to)...
  - Why did Henry eat an apple?

➤ Practice Together

- Zalhata always studies English because she wants to pass the Bac.
- After school, Ansmati finishes her homework.
- Abdul rarely went to work last year.
- After I graduate, I want to travel to visit my friend in Canada.
- Last Sunday, I swam in the ocean because I was hot.
- So that we will not fail the Bac, we will study every day.
- My brother built a new house in Moroni.
- Next year, Dida will get married.
- \*\*How test will be.

## Questions/Future

### ➤ Agenda:

- Listening
- Conversation

### ➤ Practice Listening

- I have a friend named Omar who is a student. Everyday, he wakes up and showers. Then, he brushes his teeth and goes to school, where he learns about business and accounting. He hopes he will be a teacher one day. Next year, he will go to university in France.

After school, Omar usually plays basketball with his friends, but yesterday he went home and studied because he has a test tomorrow. Because he studied, he expects he will do well on the test.

- Questions:
  - Where does Omar go everyday?
  - What does he do before he goes to school?
  - What does he usually do after school?
  - Does he take a nap?
  - What does he sometimes do?

○ Listening will be a section on your test.

### ➤ Conversation

- John: Will you travel next month?
- Omar: Yes, I will travel.
- John: \_\_\_\_\_?
- Omar: I will go to *Paris*.
- John: \_\_\_\_\_?
- Omar: I will leave on October 20<sup>th</sup> and return on October 31<sup>st</sup>.
- John: \_\_\_\_\_?
- Omar: I will go in order to visit my sister who lives there.
- John: \_\_\_\_\_
- Omar: I hope I will see the Eiffel tower. I will probably visit some museums, and I expect I will eat lots of delicious food.
- John: \_\_\_\_\_
- Omar: I will travel with my mother and father.
- John: Cool. Have a good trip.
- Omar: Thanks.

○ Demonstrate how it will be on test. Fill in question word.

### ➤ Filler:

- Idioms:
  - You will foot the bill → you'll pay
  - We will get to the bottom of it → we will solve the problem
  - We will paint the town red → we will party
  - To pop the question → to ask someone to marry you
- Invitation Game
  - Hand each pair/group an invitation to a birthday party or wedding. They have to ask questions to the one with the invitation, as if they weren't invited.
    - Who will you go the party with?
    - What will you wear?
    - What will you bring?
    - When does the party start?
    - Where is the party?
    - Why will you go to the party?

- Fortunes
  - Give each student a simple fortune (You will become a doctor). Other student has to ask first student questions about future (where will you live?).
- Conversation: Fill in proper question
  - Sariyah: Do you think you will pass the Baccalaureate?
  - Amina: Yes, I think I will pass it.
  - Sariyah: \_\_\_\_\_
  - Amina: I will go to university in Madagascar to study math.
  - Sariyah: \_\_\_\_\_ (when)
  - Amina: I will start university in August 2016.
  - Sariyah: \_\_\_\_\_ (who)
  - Amina: I will live with my brother.
  - Sariyah: \_\_\_\_\_ (where)
  - Amina: On holiday, I will return to Comoros to visit my parents
  - Sariyah: \_\_\_\_\_ (why)
  - Amina: Because I will miss them.
  - Sariyah: I understand. Good luck.
  - Amina: Thanks.
- Conversation
  - Omar: Hi, Zack.
  - Zack: Hi, Omar. Do you know how to drive?
  - Omar: Yes, I know how to drive.
  - Zack: Cool. Did you drive to school yesterday?
  - Omar: No, I did not drive to school yesterday. I walked.
  - Zack: Oh, will you drive to school tomorrow?
  - Omar: Yes, I will. Do you want to ride with me?
  - Zack: Yes, please.
  - Omar: No problem. I will see you tomorrow.
  - Zack: Thanks. Bye.

## Review

- Agenda
  - Test Format
  - Practice Writing Directions
  - Homework:STUDY
- Format of Exam
  - Listening.
    - 5 Questions
    - 2 Points
  - Vocabulary
    - 25 Questions
    - 5 Points
  - Question Words
    - 10 Questions
    - 2 Points
  - Past, Present, or Future
    - 15 Questions
    - 3 Points
    - Know your irregulars. IE Buy—bought (WRONG). Bought
    - Match subject. She run (WRONG) runs.
  - Time Prepositions (in/at/on)
    - 15 Questions
    - 3 Points
  - Match the Time
    - 5 Questions
    - 1 Point
  - Reading
    - 5 Questions
    - 2 Points
  - Writing
    - Write 5 sentences. Give Directions
    - 2 Points
- Trimester Grade
  - 12 points for 2 tests—examens
  - 4 points for a writing assignment—par écrit affect
  - 4 points for quizzes, attendance—présence—and participation—participation
  - \*\*This test worth 6 points of your semester grade
- Listening
  - Read 3 times
  - Jack works with Jill in Hahaya at the airport. Every morning, Jack wakes up, gets ready, eats, and brushes his teeth. Then, he drives to Moroni to visit his mother. Then, he drives to Mde to get Jill. Then, they go to work.
  - Where do Jack and Jill work?
    - A.Moroni b.Hahaya c. Mde d.Mbeni
  - What does Jack do every morning?
    - A. eats and brushes his teeth and brushes his hair b. wakes up and bathes c.gets ready and shaves d. eats
  - 5 questions
  - I will read only 3 times
- Vocabulary
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ (toujours) study in the afternoon. ALWAYS
  - John likes \_\_\_\_\_ (visiter) his family. TO VISIT

- Martin Luther King had a \_\_\_\_\_ (rêve). DREAM
- 25 questions
- Infinitive for verb
- Questions—write a question for the underlined part.
  - Jack will travel tomorrow.
  - I cooked madabayesterday.
  - School finishes at 3:00.
  - 10 questions
- Present/Past/Future
  - Review Adverbs
    - Present
      - Always
      - Usually
      - Sometimes
      - Rarely
      - Never
    - Past
      - Yesterday
      - Last \_\_\_\_\_
      - \_\_\_\_\_ ago
    - Future
      - Tomorrow
      - Next \_\_\_\_\_
      - \_\_\_\_\_ From now
      - In \_\_\_\_\_
  - Usually, she \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) in the afternoon.
  - Jill never \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to Moroni last year.
  - I will study, and I \_\_\_\_\_ (to pass) the test.
  - 2 days ago, Jack \_\_\_\_\_ (to build) a house.
  - 15 questions
  - Know irregulars
    - Buy. If write buyed. Wrong. Bought
  - Subject verb agreement
    - She run. Wrong. She runs.
- Time Prepositions
  - \_\_\_\_\_ Sundays, I study \_\_\_\_\_ 6:00 \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
  - 15 questions
- Match the time
  - 2:45      2:30    2:15
  - Half past two, quarter to two      quarter after two      quarter to three
  - 5 questions
- Writing
  - Write at least 3 sentences about what you do every night. What time do you do it? Then, write 3 sentences about what you did yesterday. Who did you do it with?
- Reading
  - In 2006, Jack graduated from university in Madagascar. He applied for a job in France as a teacher, but he did not get it. So, he moved to Canada to work as a pilot. He is married and his wife works as a doctor. They will have a child next year.
  - Where did Jack go to university?
    - A. Madagascar    B. France      C. Canada      D. America
  - What is Jack's job?
    - A. Teacher      B. doctor      c. pilot      d. businessman
  - 5 questions

## Jeopardy Review

Question Word	Verb Tense	Preposition of Time	Vocabulary
1. I wake up <u>at 5:45</u> .	1. Yesterday, we _____ (to drive) the car.	1. _____ Tuesday	1. Dormir—to sleep
2. <u>My sister</u> will go to Canada tomorrow.	2. He always _____ (to walk) to school.	2. _____ the afternoon	2. Temps—time
3. John studies <u>in the library</u> after school.	3. She usually _____ (to brush) her teeth after she eats.	3. _____ 1989	3. Never—jamais
4. I read a <u>book</u> yesterday.	4. Four weeks from now, they _____ (to buy) a new car.	4. _____ 6:45	4. Hier—yesterday
5. I go to school <u>so that I can learn</u> .	5. Every day last year, they _____ (to sing)	5. _____ night	5. Tomorrow—demain
6. He usually drives <u>the car</u> .	6. He _____ (to graduate) in two weeks.	6. _____ February	6. Appliquer---to apply
7. <u>The doctor</u> returned.	7. 2 days ago, she _____ (to teach) English.	7. _____ three years	7. échouer –to fail
8. We got married <u>because we wanted to have a child</u> .	8. She _____ (to babysit) her sister last night.	8. _____ December 2	8. To lie down—coucher
9. I will retire from work <u>at Sowaprix</u> next week.	9. I _____ (to take) a taxi to the beach and swam.	9. _____ 5 minutes	9. To get dressed—s’habiller
10. I will see you again <u>in 4 days</u> .	10. He will move to America, and he _____ (to work) there.	10. _____ Saturday afternoon	10. Free time—du temps libre

## Test

### Listening—2 Points

**Directions:** Listen to the teacher read about Amina and Sumiya. Circle the correct answer for each question.

Amina and Sumiyah are best friends. Every morning, they walk to school together. Usually, they walk with Amina's sister, and sometimes, Hassane walks with them to Moroni. After school, Amina always plays basketball in Iconi with Hadija because she likes to play basketball. Sumiyah always studies science after school so that she is smarter. In the evening, Amina babysits her cousin Noura, but Sumiyah cooks food to eat. On weekends, Amina studies because she wants to pass the baccalaureate next year and then go to university. Usually, Sumiyah plays football for sport in Hamramba.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Test 1A

### Listening—2 Points

**Directions:** Listen to the teacher read about Amina and Sumiya. Circle the correct answer for each question.

- Who usually walks with Amina and Sumiya?
  - Amina's sister
  - Hassane
  - Hadija
  - Noura
- Where is Amina's and Sumiyah's school?
  - Moroni
  - Iconi
  - Mde
  - Hamramba
- What does Sumiyah do after school?
  - Studies science
  - Plays basketball
  - Plays football
  - Babysits her cousin
- When does Sumiyah cook?
  - Every morning
  - After school
  - In the evening
  - At night
- Why does Sumiyah play football?
  - Because she likes to play basketball.
  - So that she is smarter.
  - In order to pass the baccalaureate
  - For sport

### Reading—2 Points

**Directions:** Read the passage and circle the correct answer for each question.

Fatima has worked very hard. She grew up in Comoros went to school at Lycee Said Mohammed Sheik. After she graduated, she traveled to a university in Madagascar where she studied science. She graduated from university in 2006 and moved to Comoros. Now, in 2015, she lives in Moheli where she works as a doctor at the hospital. When she has time, she sings with her friends, swims in the ocean, and cooks. She is engaged to a wonderful man, and they will get married next year. He lives in Anjouan, and she expects that he will move into her house in Moheli.

- Where did Fatima go after she graduated from Lycee Said Mohammed Sheik?
  - Comoros
  - Madagascar
  - Moroni
  - Moheli
- What is Fatima's job?
  - She is a student.
  - She is a professor.
  - She is a doctor
  - She is a mother.
- What does Fatima do in her free time?
  - She swims and runs.
  - She cooks and teaches.
  - She swims and sings.
  - She sings and travels.
- When will Fatima marry?
  - 2016
  - 2014
  - 2015
  - 2006
- Does Fatima think she will move to Anjouan?
  - Yes.
  - No.
  - I don't know.

### Match the Time—1 Point

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6:30
  - \_\_\_\_\_ 8:45
  - \_\_\_\_\_ 6:15
  - \_\_\_\_\_ 8:15
  - \_\_\_\_\_ 6:00
- Six o'clock
  - Quarter after eight o'clock
  - Quarter to nine o'clock
  - Quarter to eight o'clock
  - Quarter past six o'clock
  - Quarter to six o'clock
  - Half past six o'clock

### Question Words—2 points

**Directions:** Write a question that corresponds to the underlined word in the sentence.

16. My mother will cook food tonight.

17. I want to travel because I want to visit new countries.

18. She studied her science homework with her friends.

19. My brother will watch TV tomorrow?

20. I ate lunch at midnight yesterday.

21. I took a nap because I was tired.

22. I like to eat at the restaurant Nassib.

23. I always go to sleep at 9:15 p.m.

24. Fatima will travel to Canada next year.

25. I studied at my house.

### **Prepositions of Time—3 Points**

**Directions:** Fill in the blanks with the correct preposition of time (in, at, or on)

26. He will take the baccalaureate \_\_\_\_\_ three months.

27. What do you do \_\_\_\_\_ the evening?

28. I will leave \_\_\_\_\_ August 3.

29. \_\_\_\_\_ Muharram, I wake up early and swim in the ocean.

30. \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday, we visited our family.

31. They drive to work \_\_\_\_\_ 8:45 a.m.

32. I go to sleep \_\_\_\_\_ night.

33. \_\_\_\_\_ 2016, we will travel to France for university.

34. After school, \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoons, Julie hangs out with her friends.

35. The baccalaureate is always \_\_\_\_\_ June.

36. \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes, class will end.

37. I will be twenty one \_\_\_\_\_ Monday.

38. Ansmati usually cooks rice \_\_\_\_\_ 6:30 p.m with her mother.

39. You got married \_\_\_\_\_ 2012.

40. They study together every morning before school \_\_\_\_\_ Friday mornings.

### **Vocabulary—5 Points**

**Directions:** Fill in the blank with the correct English word for the word in French (in parenthesis).

41. \_\_\_\_\_ (parfois), I study after school.

42. I forgot \_\_\_\_\_ (se baigner) last night after cooking supper.

43. She really likes \_\_\_\_\_ (lire) adventure books.

44. I have a test in one \_\_\_\_\_ (heure).

45. I \_\_\_\_\_ (rarement) watch movies.

46. My father taught me how \_\_\_\_\_ (conduire) his car.

47. My mother always asks me \_\_\_\_\_ (balayer) the house.





**Listening—2 Points****Directions:** Listen to the teacher read about Amina and Sumiya. Circle the correct answer for each question.

6. Who sometimes walks with Amina and Sumiya?
- |  |                     |  |
|--|---------------------|--|
| a. Amina's sister                        | b. Hassane          | ➤ When does Amina babysit?               |
| b. Hadija                                | d. Noura            | a. Every morning                         |
| ➤ Where is Amina's and Sumiyah's school? |                     | b. After school                          |
| a. Hamramba                              | b. Iconi            | c. In the evening                        |
| c. Moroni                                | d. Mde              | d. At night                              |
| ➤ What does Amina do after school?       |                     | ➤ Why does Amina study?                  |
| a. Studies science                       | b. Plays basketball | a. Because she likes to play basketball. |
| c. Plays football                        | d. Babysits her     | b. So that she is smarter.               |
| cousin                                   |                     | c. In order to pass the baccalaureate    |
|  |                     | d. For sport                             |

**Writing—2 Points****Directions:** Write at least 3 sentences about what you do every morning. What time do you do it? Then, write at least 3 sentences about what you did on Sunday. Who did you do it with?

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

**Vocabulary—5 Points****Directions:** Fill in the blank with the correct English word for the word in French (in parenthesis).

- \_\_\_\_\_ (habituellement), I study after school.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (jamais) watch movies.
- In my \_\_\_\_\_ (du temps libre), I love to spend time with my friends.
- My father taught me how \_\_\_\_\_ (se raser).
- My \_\_\_\_\_ (objectif) is to become a doctor.
- My uncle wants \_\_\_\_\_ (appliquer) for a new job in South Africa.
- He did not prefer \_\_\_\_\_ (boire) water.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (avant) I can play basketball today, I have to study my English homework.
- I need \_\_\_\_\_ (s'habiller) for school.
- I hope \_\_\_\_\_ (voyager) to Canada someday.
- My \_\_\_\_\_ (rêve) is to become a teacher.
- She really likes \_\_\_\_\_ (étudier) for school.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (hier), I went to Moroni to teach English.
- You need \_\_\_\_\_ (se laver) your hands.
- When I am older, I want \_\_\_\_\_ (construire) my own house.
- I forgot \_\_\_\_\_ (se doucher) last night after cooking supper.
- My brother went to a wedding that ended at \_\_\_\_\_ (midi).
- My sister wants \_\_\_\_\_ (reposer) following her class.
- After you eat, you need \_\_\_\_\_ (se brosser) your teeth.
- In three years, I expect \_\_\_\_\_ (partir) Comoros and go to university.
- I have a test in one \_\_\_\_\_ (jour).
- I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ (échouer) this test.

- I love \_\_\_\_\_ (danser) to music.
- She really likes \_\_\_\_\_ (lire) adventure books.
- Look at the \_\_\_\_\_ (pendule) and tell me the time.

### **Prepositions of Time—3 Points**

**Directions:** Fill in the blanks with the correct preposition of time (in, at, or on)

- They study together every morning before school \_\_\_\_\_ Mondays.
- \_\_\_\_\_ twenty minutes, class will end.
- I wake up \_\_\_\_\_ 5:45 a.m.
- The trimester will end \_\_\_\_\_ December 19th.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2012, we traveled to France for university.
- He will take the baccalaureate \_\_\_\_\_ Friday morning.
- After school, \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoons, Julie hangs out with her friends.
- You will take the baccalaureate \_\_\_\_\_ 2018.
- Ansmati usually cooks rice \_\_\_\_\_ night with her mother.
- The taxi always leaves \_\_\_\_\_ 6:15 a.m.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Muharram, I wake up early and swim in the ocean.
- I will be twenty one \_\_\_\_\_ two days.
- Yesterday, we visited our family \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon.
- The baccalaureate is always \_\_\_\_\_ June.
- What do you do \_\_\_\_\_ Sundays?

### **Match the Time—1 Point**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 9:45
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9:15
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9:30
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10:00
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7:15
- A. Ten o'clock
- B. Quarter after nine o'clock
- C. Quarter to seven o'clock
- D. Quarter to nine o'clock
- E. Quarter past seven o'clock
- F. Quarter to ten o'clock
- G. Half past nine o'clock

### **Question Words—2 points**

**Directions:** Write a question that corresponds to the underlined word in the sentence.

- I took a nap in the library.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- My father will watch the football game.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Ali woke up at 4:45 a.m.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I studied my physics homework with my friend.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Sarah moved to France last week.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I wash my clothes so that they are clean and smell good.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Hadija will wash her hands before she eats.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- He wants to travel to Ireland and Australia.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

- She always eats lunch at noon.
- 

- We visited Comoros because we wanted to teach English.
- 

### **Past, Present, or Future Tense—3 Points**

**Directions:** Fill in the blanks with the correct tense (Past, Present, or Future Tense) of the verb in parenthesis.

- My friend \_\_\_\_\_ (to hope) she will become a doctor someday.
- Two days ago, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) not sleep.
- Amina never \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to class last year.
- Yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to read) a book for 3 hours because we didn't have electricity.
- My brother \_\_\_\_\_ (to graduate) next month from high school.
- Sometimes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to sweep) the house in the afternoons to help my mother.
- I expect I \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) children in five years.
- John \_\_\_\_\_ (to swim) in the ocean everyday last year.
- After I run, I always \_\_\_\_\_ (to shower).
- On weekends, Sariyah gets up at 5:30 a.m., and then she \_\_\_\_\_ (to cook) breakfast.
- Hakim will move to a new house, but first he \_\_\_\_\_ (to build) it.
- Henry never \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) new clothes.
- I was late to class yesterday because I \_\_\_\_\_ (to sleep) late.
- For Eid, my sister \_\_\_\_\_ (to babysit) me and cooked rice and madaba.
- Two days from now, hopefully, my aunt \_\_\_\_\_ (to pass) the baccalaureate.

### **Reading—2 Points**

**Directions:** Read the passage and circle the correct answer for each question.

Hassane has worked very hard. He grew up in Comoros, and he went to school at Lycee Said Mohammed Sheik. After he graduated, he traveled to a university in France where he studied business administration. He graduated from university in 2006 and moved back to Comoros. Now, in 2015, he lives in Moroni where he works as a professor at the university. He is engaged to a wonderful woman, and he will get married next year. He will move into her house, and he expects they will have children shortly thereafter. He wants to have six or seven children. When he has time, he runs to Mde, reads books, and swims in the ocean.

- Where did Hassane go after he graduated from Lycee Said Mohammed Sheik?
  - a. Comoros    b. France
  - c. Mde    d. Moroni
- When will Hassane marry?
  - a. 2006    b. 2014
  - c. 2015    d. 2016
- What is Hassane's job?
  - a. He is a student.    b. He is a professor.
  - c. He is a businessman.    d. He is a husband.
- Does Hassane think he will have children?
  - a. Yes.    b. No.    c. I don't know.
- What does Hassane do in his free time?
  - a. He swims and runs.    b. He reads books and teaches.
  - c. He swims and studies.    d. He runs and travels.

## Body Parts

### ➤ Agenda

- Vocabulary
- Practice Vocabulary
- What do you use to
- Give back tests (If ?s, come to my office)
- 

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Nouns

- Body--corps
- Hair—cheveux
- Head—tête
- Face—visage
- ~~Forehead—front~~
- Cheek—joue
- Chin--menton
- Eye—œil
- Glasses--lunettes
- ~~Eyelash—cil~~
- ~~Eyebrow—sourcil~~
- Nose--nez
- Ear—oreille
- Mouth—bouche
- Lip—lèvre
- Tooth (teeth)--dent
- Tongue—langue
- Neck—cou
- Shoulder—épaule
- Arm—bras
- ~~Armpit—~~
- Elbow—Coude
- Wrist--poignet
- Hand—main
- Fist--poing
- Finger—doigt
- Finger nail--ongle
- Chest—poitrine
- Stomach=belly—estomac
- Belly button—
- Leg—jambe
- ~~Thigh—cuisse~~
- ~~Calf—~~
- Knee--genou
- Foot (feet)—pied
- Ankle--cheville
- Heel--talon
- Toe—orteil
- Toe nail—orteil ongle
- Back—dos

#### ○ Verbs

- To Touch—toucher
- To smell—odeur
- To see→saw--voir

- To hear→heard—entendre
- To talk—parler
- To wink—clin d' oeil
- To blink—cligner
- To lick—lécher
- To exercise—exercer
- To rub—frotter
- To pat—tapoter
- To use—utiliser
- To taste—goûter
- To make--faire

➤ Practice

- I point to body part, they tell me what it is
- I say part, they point

➤ What do you use to \_\_\_\_?

- To smell
- To touch
- To hear
- To see
- To play football
- To play basketball
- To cook
- To wash clothes
- To sweep
- To brush your teeth
- To run
- To swim

## Body Parts

- Agenda:
  - Song
  - Write
  - Reading
  - Simon Says
- Song: Head, Shoulders, Knees, and Toes
  - Head, shoulders, knees, and toes, knees and toes.  
Head, shoulders, knees, and toes, knees and toes.  
And eyes, and ears, and mouth, and nose  
Head, shoulders, knees, and toes, knees and toes.
- Write Sentences
  - What body part do you use:
    - To drink water?
    - To bathe?
    - To read?
    - To play football?
    - To watch TV?
    - To cook?
    - To taste?
    - To swim?
    - To walk?
- Reading
  - My mother is great. For my birthday yesterday, she cooked chicken and rice, my favourite. My mom also made cake. In the afternoon, I heard her making the cake, and I smelt it, too. The smell made me hungry, and I rubbed my stomach. So, I went to watch my mom. She saw me, winked, and gave me the spoon to lick to taste the cake. It tasted very good!  
Last night, we ate the chicken and rice and then the cake. It was so good! I ate a lot of food. After I finished, I patted my stomach because I was very full.
  - Questions:
    - Who cooked the chicken and rice?
    - What did my mother cook? (chicken, rice, cake)
    - What did my mother do when she saw me?
    - When did we eat the food my mother made?
    - Why did I pat my stomach?
- Simon Says
- Filler
  - Song: The Hokey Pokey
  - Can you pat your head and rub your belly at the same time?
  - Reading-Achille's Heel
    - Achilles' mother was very concerned about her baby son's mortality. So, she dipped him in the River Styx, whose waters were said to make a person invulnerable. However, she held him tightly by the foot as she dipped him into the river—so tightly that the water never touched his heel. As a result, Achilles was invulnerable everywhere but his heel.  
Achilles became a great warrior in the Greek war against the Trojans. He was a strong and courageous warrior because he thought he was invulnerable. In fact, he was the Greeks' greatest warrior. Achilles won many battles, but one day, a Trojan shot Achilles in the heel where he was vulnerable because that is where his mother held him when she dipped him in the River Styx. So, Achille's died.
    - Achille's Heel-powerful person's fatal weakness
    - Questions

- Who dipped Achilles in the River Styx?
- Where was Achilles vulnerable?
- Who
- Why did Achilles' mother dip him in the River Styx?



## Describing People (Physical)

- Agenda
  - Vocabulary
  - Adjective Order
  - Describe Each Other
  - Write
- Vocabulary Physical Appearance—apparence physique
  - Verb
    - To describe—décrire
    - To braid-- tresser
  - Adjectives
    - Big—grand
    - Small—petit
    - Thin—maigre
    - Skinny—mince
    - Large—grand
    - Fat—graisse
      - Rude-impoli
      - Impolite--impoli
      - Polite--poli
    - Overweight—
      - Weight--poids
    - Strong—fort
    - Weak—faible
    - Short—court
    - Tall—grand
    - Long—long
    - Young—jeune
    - Old—vieux
    - Dark-skinned
    - Light-skinned
  - Adjectives—Hair
    - Blond—blonde
    - Red--rouge
    - Brown--marron
    - Black--noir
    - Straight--droit
    - Wavy-- ondulé
    - Curly--frisé
    - Shoulder-length
    - Bald—chauve
  - Nouns-Hair
    - Facial hair—pilosité faciale
    - Beard—beard
    - Moustache—moustache
    - Braids--tresse
- Describing People
  - Hair: Length + Style + Colour + hair
  - Body Parts: Size + Colour + Body Part

- To be—used with (size) tall, skinny, large
- To have—used with traits (traits) i.e. blue eyes, long hair
- Give Examples on board
- Practice Describing People
  - As a class, describe me. Describe another student.
- Write
  - Write 4 sentences describing yourself
- Filler
  - Write Sentence Using Adjectives in correct order
    - Blue/small/eyes
    - Short/red/curly/hair
    - Hair/shoulder-length/black/straight
    - Beard/black/long
    - Man/tall/overweight\
  - Guess Who
  - What will you look like in 10 years?

## Compound Sentence

- Agenda
  - Review
  - Compound Sentence
  - Writing
  - Conversation
- Review
  - Ask students to describe another student in class
- Introduce Compound Sentence
  - Remember that to form a sentence, you need a subject and a verb.
    - She is tall
  - In a compound sentence, there are 2 subjects and 2 verbs usually joined by a comma and a conjunction.
  - Conjunctions
    - And—et
    - But—mais
  - She **has** short hair, and she **is** tall.
  - He is tall, and he has a beard.
  - She is tall, but he is short.
  - We are weak, but they are strong.
  - I have brown eyes, and I have brown hair.
  - Ask for examples from students
- Writing
  - Write three compound sentences describing someone in class.
- Conversation
  - Mother: Excuse me, I lost my son.
  - Police Officer: Oh, no. How old is he?
  - Mother: He's six years old.
  - Police Officer: Describe him.
  - Mother: He's short and skinny, and he has short, curly brown hair.
  - Police Officer: What colour are his eyes?
  - Mother: He has big blue eyes, and he has a big nose, but he has small ears.
  - Police Officer: When did you last see him?
  - Mother: Two hours ago.
  - Police Officer: Where were you?
  - Mother: We were at the football stadium watching the football game.
  - Police Officer: Ok. I will tell the other police officers, and we will help you find your son.
  - Mother: Thank you!

## Describing People 2

- Agenda
  - Review
  - Conversation
  - Write
  - Conversation
  - Exercise
- Review
  - Ask students to describe another student
  - RAISE HANDS
  - \*What does he/she look like=describe him/her
- Conversation
  - Sonya: Hi, Sarah. Do you know my friend Ryan?
  - Sarah: What does he look like?
  - Sonya: He has long straight blond hair, and he has big ears and a large nose.
  - Sarah: What colour are his eyes?
  - Sonya: He has blue eyes.
  - Sarah: Is he tall and skinny?
  - Sonya: Yes, he's tall and skinny.
  - Sarah: Yes, I know him.
  - Sonya: Oh, good. He's visiting Comoros tomorrow for holiday.
  - Sarah: I hope I will get to see him.
  - Sonya: Of course. Ryan and I will see you tomorrow after he arrives.
- Write
  - Give each student a picture of a person. They have to write 4 sentences describing that person
  - Share with class
- Conversation
  - Using their descriptions of their picture, they fill in the underlined info with what they wrote.
- Exercise
  - Organize words into sentence
  - Braids/long
  - Wavy/blond/long/hair
  - Bald
  - Moustache/big
  - Strong/woman
  - Hair/short/brown/straight
  - Ears/strong/man/big
  - Young/nose/small/girl

## Comparative and superlative

- Vocab
  - To compare--comparer
- Irregulars

Adjective	French Translation	Comparative	Superlative
Bad	Mauvais	Worse	Worst
Good	Bon	Better	Best
Well	Bien	Better	best
Little	Petit	Less	Least
Many	Beaucoup de	More	Most
Far		Farther/further	Farthest/furthest

- Comparative
  - Adjective or adverb (look identical, but use different)
  - Compares 1 person or object to another
  - As \_\_\_\_\_ as (comme \_\_\_\_\_ que)
  - Usually ends in -er
  - If ends in y, change to i and add er
    - Pretty → prettier
  - (More/less) \_\_\_\_\_ than (plus/moins \_\_\_\_\_ que)
    - More or less with 2 syllables or more
  - Examples:
    - Hold up two sheets of different color paper that are the same size
      - The black paper is as big as the orange paper.
    - Hold up two sheets of different color paper that are different sizes
      - The red paper is bigger than the black paper.
  - EX: Ali is taller than Hadija
- Superlative
  - Greatest degree of adjective or adverb
  - Usually ends in -est
  - If ends in y, change y to i and add -est
    - Pretty → prettiest
  - The (most/least) \_\_\_\_\_
    - Most or least with 2 syllables or more
  - EX: The red paper is the biggest.  
I am the tallest.
- Have students line up by height. Go through as tall as, taller than, shorter than, shortest, tallest
  - Color/size
- Write a sentence using comparative or superlative and words below
  - My nose/ big/
  - My friend/I/skinny
  - New York, California, small
  - Ginger/Fred/dance/well
  - Men/eat/much
  - The woman/than man/strong
  - The doctor/the teacher/ young
  - I/old
  - He/overweight

## Describing People (Personality)

- Agenda
  - Vocabulary
  - “Catch” Game
  - Review
- Vocabulary—Personality--personalité
  - Adjectives
    - Anxious— anxieux
    - Calm—calme
    - Happy—content
    - Sad--triste
    - Brave=courageous—courageux
    - Generous—généreux
    - Selfish--égoïste
    - Nice—gentil
    - Mean—méchant
    - Honest—honnête
    - Patient—patient
    - Impatient—impatient
    - Polite—poli
    - Impolite=rude—impoli
    - Intelligent—intelligent
    - Stupid—stupide
    - Lazy—paresseux
    - Hard-working—travailleur
    - Rich—riche
    - Poor--pauvre
    - Athletic—sportif
    - Serious—sérieux
    - Funny--drôle
    - Studious—studieux
    - Timid=shy—timide
- Sentences
  - To be + personality/Trait
  - I am happy.
  - Call on students. Describe yourself using 2 vocabulary words on board.
- “Catch”
  - Give each student vocab card with English word on it. Stand around room. Teacher gives one student a ball. Teacher holds up card with French translation. Student with ball throws ball to person holding English word on it. Student throwing ball must say English word as throw ball. Repeat.
  - Do a few rounds. Try to get faster.
  - Rotate Vocab cards and repeat.
- Review Comparative and Superlative
  - He/I/anxious
  - The president/rich
  - The teacher/the students/happy (= as \_\_\_\_ as)
  - The child/the mother/impatient
  - The boy/lazy
  - We/they/honest
  - \*\*For quiz on Monday

## Describing People

\*\*Bring Small pieces of paper numbered 1 and 2 for quiz

### ➤ Agenda

- Quiz
- Reading

### ➤ Quiz

- Divide board in two. Give students alternating papers numbered 1 or 2.
- For 1

1. Eye—œil
2. Lip—lèvre
3. Shoulder—épaule
4. Hand—main
5. Leg—jambe
6. To smell—odeur
7. To wink—clin d'œil
8. To lick—lécher
9. Weak—faible
10. Wavy-- ondulé
11. Funny--drôle
12. Timid=shy—timide
13. Selfish—égoïste
14. Brave=Courageous—courageux
15. Braid—tresse
16. We/they/happy (=)
17. She/tall
18. Sumiyah/Sariyah/nice
19. I/he/strong
20. The woman/the man/intelligent

- For 2

1. Ear—oreille
2. Tongue—langue
3. Knee-genou
4. Finger—doigt
5. Arm—bras
6. To Touch—toucher
7. To blink—cligner
8. To rub—frotter
9. Skinny—mince
10. Curly--frisé
11. Lazy—paresseux
12. Serious—sérieux
13. Hard-working—travailleur
14. Impolite=rude—impoli
15. Bald—chauve
16. She/I/athletic
17. The baby/the mother/calm
18. The man/honest
19. John/Jack/short (=)
20. He/small

### ➤ Reading

My brother Adam is four years older than I am. We didn't know each other very well as children because he lived with his father in Canada, while I lived with our mother in Comoros. Since then, he married a beautiful woman and moved to Comoros with his wife and two children. His son Ibrahim is six, and his daughter Sonya is nine.

Adam is very handsome. He is tall and very strong because he eats healthy food and works out. He has short curly black hair, and he has small brown eyes and a small nose. Adam has bad eyesight, so he wears glasses. He also has a beard and a moustache, but you can still see his big smile, and Adam likes to smile.

He's very athletic and loves the outdoors. He plays football almost every day with his friends, and he runs every morning before he goes to work at the airport in Hahaya. He works as a pilot for Kenya Airways, and he takes his job seriously. He flies to Madagascar most mornings and returns to Comoros most afternoons. Because Adam is so hard-working, he makes good money. He isn't rich, but he also isn't poor. He makes enough money to sufficiently provide for his family. Adam is also very intelligent and generous. In his free time, he volunteers at the American Corner and teaches English to people for free. He's not timid. He's a great guy! The thing I like most about Adam is his sense of humour. He is very funny. If I am sad, he can always cheer me up with a funny story.

Adam is a great person, and I'm very glad Adam is my brother, but he is also one of my best friends.

○ Questions:

1. Who is Adam?
2. As a child, where did Adam live?
3. Who is older—Ibrahim or Sonya?
4. Who moved to Comoros with Adam?
5. Why is Adam athletic?
6. Why does Adam make good money?
7. What does Adam do in his spare time?

True (vrai) or False (faux)

8. Adam has brown hair.
9. Adam is a pilot.
10. Adam is lazy.
11. Adam is shy.
12. Adam is short.

➤ Writing Assignment

- Describe your mother. What does she look like (physical appearance)? What is she like (personality)? What was she like yesterday? Why?

Use at least 2 comparatives and 1 superlative. Use at least 2 compound sentences. Write at least 10 sentences

- Worth 4 points for trimester

- GRADING:

1. Correct verbs (to be/to have)
2. Correct tense (present and past)
3. 2 Comparatives (2 points)
4. 1 Superlative
5. 2 Compound sentences with correct grammar (2 points)
6. 10 Sentences
7. Adjective Order
8. Cohesiveness/Understanding



## Test Review

- Format
  - Vocabulary 20 Questions
  - Reading 5 Questions
  - Comparative and Superlative 10 Questions
  - Descriptions 10 Questions
  - Writing
- Vocabulary
  - Impoli-impolite
  - Voir—to see
  - Court—short
  - Goûter—to taste
  - Bouche—mouth
  - Généreux—generous
- Reading
  - My mother's name is Julie. She is 42 years old. She has 1 sister and 1 brother. Her sister Nancy is 2 years younger than my mother, and her brother Tom is 4 years older than my mother. My mother is very generous. She always helps anyone who helps for help. She is not shy. She is a good mother. She is very intelligent and helps me and my brother with our school work. When we don't understand, she is patient with us.
  - How old is Nancy?
    - A.40 B.42 C.44 D.46
  - How old is Tom?
    - A.40 B.42 C.44 D.46
  - Julie is...
    - A.Generous and anxious B.Patient and polite C.Intelligent and shy D. Patient and generous
- Comparative and Superlative
  - The girl/tall/the boy
  - The school/big/my house (=)
  - My brother/bad
  - My friend/anxious/I (<)
  - I/good
- Descriptions
  - The teacher/patient
  - Eyes/blue/small
  - Short/blond/curly/hair
  - Weak/baby/girl
  - Intelligent/Students
  - Person/short/large
- Writing
  - Describe your best friend. What does she/he look like (physical appearance)? What is she/he like (personality)? Write 6 sentences. Use 1 comparative and 1 superlative.
- BINGO for vocabulary

## Test

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Test 2A

/100

/20

### Vocabulary

1. My brother hit the man with his \_\_\_\_\_ (poing).
2. She was very \_\_\_\_\_ (impoli) to the man in the market.
3. Hassane is \_\_\_\_\_ (travailleur).
4. My uncle has no \_\_\_\_\_ (cheveux).
5. I went to Mde \_\_\_\_\_ (voir) my friend.
6. You have milk on your \_\_\_\_\_ (menton).
7. That girl is \_\_\_\_\_ (court).
8. My sister has \_\_\_\_\_ (friséé) hair.
9. On Sunday, I want \_\_\_\_\_ (tresser) my hair.
10. I want \_\_\_\_\_ (entendre) the news.
11. Can you touch your \_\_\_\_\_ (orteil)?
12. To be healthy, you need \_\_\_\_\_ (exercer).
13. The girl makes me laugh because she is very \_\_\_\_\_ (drôle).
14. I need \_\_\_\_\_ (utiliser) the toilet.
15. Yesterday, I found my \_\_\_\_\_ (vieux) copybook.
16. My best friend is nice and \_\_\_\_\_ (honnête).
17. Don't forget to wash your \_\_\_\_\_ (main).
18. When you make the cake, I want \_\_\_\_\_ (goûter) it.
19. The police officer asked me \_\_\_\_\_ (décrire) my child.
20. When did you hurt your \_\_\_\_\_ (épaule)?

### Reading

Jody has a big family. She has 5 sisters and 0 brothers. Jody's sister Zaina is the oldest child in the family. Lela is the youngest child in the family. Jody is ten. Zaina is eight years older than Jody, and Lela is six years younger than Jody.

Jody is beautiful. She is tall and large. Because she exercises every day, she is very strong. She has long curly brown hair and small blue eyes. She usually wears her hair in a ponytail or braids. She has a small nose and small ears.

Jody has a great personality. She is kind to everyone she meets. She is a good daughter because she is honest and never tells lies to her parents. Jody is ambitious. She wants to become a doctor, so she usually studies every day. Since she is studious, she is very intelligent and receives good marks in school. Her family is not rich, so Jody works by washing clothes for other people in order to earn money. Jody is not lazy! She's not always serious, though. She can also be funny. She likes to hang out with her friends after school. Sometimes they play football, and sometimes they read or just talk.

21. Who is Zaina?  
a. Jody's younger sister.    b. Jody's older sister.    c. Jody's mother.    d. Jody's father
22. How old is Lela?  
a. 10    b. 18    c. 16    d. 4
23. Why is Jody intelligent?  
a. Because she receives good grades    b. Because she is studious  
c. because she exercises every day    d. Because she never tells lies to her parents
24. Jody is lazy.  
a. Yes    b. No    c. I don't know.
25. Jody is...  
a. Intelligent and lazy    b. serious and rich    c. funny and lazy    d. kind and studious

**Comparative and Superlative**

- 26. The girl/short/the boy \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 27. My teacher/serious/your teacher (=) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 28. Dora/brave/Diego \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 29. I/good \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 30. My friend/studious/I (<) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 31. A mouse/small/a cat \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 32. The school/big/my house (=) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 33. My brother/bad \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 34. The president/rich \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 35. My sister/selfish/my brother (<) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Descriptions**

- 36. The teacher/calm \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 37. Short/blond/curly/hair \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 38. Nose/small \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 39. Hair/long/black/straight \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 40. Brown/big/eyes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 41. Weak/baby/ \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 42. Students/intelligent \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 43. Man/tall/overweight \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 44. Braids/long \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 45. Ears/strong/boy/big \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Writing**

Describe your best friend. What does she/he look like (physical appearance)? What is she/he like (personality)? Write 6 sentences. Use 1 comparative and 1 superlative.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**Writing**

Describe your best friend. What does she/he look like (physical appearance)? What is she/he like (personality)? Write 6 sentences. Use 1 comparative and 1 superlative.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Vocabulary**

- 46. On Friday, I want \_\_\_\_\_ (tresser) my hair.
- 47. My brother hit the man with his \_\_\_\_\_ (main).
- 48. She was very \_\_\_\_\_ (poli) to the man in the market.
- 49. Hassane is very \_\_\_\_\_ (paresseux).
- 50. To be healthy, you need \_\_\_\_\_ (exercer).
- 51. My uncle is \_\_\_\_\_ (chauve).
- 52. I went to Mde \_\_\_\_\_ (voir) my friend.
- 53. When you make the cake, I want \_\_\_\_\_ (goûter) it.
- 54. I need \_\_\_\_\_ (utiliser) the toilet.
- 55. You have milk on your \_\_\_\_\_ (lèvre).
- 56. That girl is \_\_\_\_\_ (mince).
- 57. My sister has \_\_\_\_\_ (ondulé) hair.
- 58. My friend likes \_\_\_\_\_ (clin d'oeil) at me when she is joking.
- 59. Do you have a big \_\_\_\_\_ (bouche)?
- 60. The girl makes me angry because she is very \_\_\_\_\_ (égoïste).
- 61. Yesterday, the \_\_\_\_\_ (jeune) girl bought a new copybook.
- 62. My best friend is nice and \_\_\_\_\_ (généreux).
- 63. Don't forget to wash your \_\_\_\_\_ (pied).
- 64. The police officer asked me \_\_\_\_\_ (décrire) my child.
- 65. When did you hurt your \_\_\_\_\_ (genou)?

**Descriptions**

- 66. Mustache/short/black \_\_\_\_\_
- 67. Short/blond/curly/hair \_\_\_\_\_
- 68. Eyes/blue/small \_\_\_\_\_
- 69. Students/hard-working \_\_\_\_\_
- 70. Big/ears \_\_\_\_\_
- 71. Skinny/student/girl \_\_\_\_\_
- 72. Hair/short/brown/straight \_\_\_\_\_
- 73. Person/short/ \_\_\_\_\_
- 74. The teacher/patient \_\_\_\_\_
- 75. nose/strong/girl/small \_\_\_\_\_

## Reading

Zaina has a big family. She has 5 sisters and 0 brothers. Zaina's sister Lela is the oldest child in the family. Jody is the youngest child in the family. Zaina is ten. Lela is eight years older than Zaina, and Jody is six years younger than Zaina.

Zaina is beautiful. She is tall and thin. Because she exercises every day, she is very strong. She has long curly brown hair and small blue eyes. She usually wears her hair in a ponytail or braids. She has a small nose and small ears.

Zaina has a great personality. She is kind to everyone she meets. She is a good daughter because she is honest and never tells lies to her parents. Zaina is ambitious. She wants to become a doctor, so she usually studies every day. Since she is studious, she is very intelligent and receives good marks in school. Her family is not rich, so Jody works by washing clothes for other people in order to earn money. Zaina is not lazy! She's not always serious, though. She can also be funny. She likes to hang out with her friends after school. Sometimes they play football, and sometimes they read or just talk.

76. Who is Jody?

- a. Jody's younger sister.    b. Jody's older sister    c. Jody's mother    d. Jody's father

77. How old is Lela?

- a. 10    b. 18    c. 16    d. 4

78. Is Zaina skinny?

- a. Yes    b. No    c. I don't know.

79. Why is Jody strong?

- a. Because she receives good grades    b. Because she is studious  
c. because she exercises every day    d. Because she never tells lies to her parents

80. Zaina is...

- a. Intelligent and lazy    b. honest and intelligent    c. lazy and kind    d. rich and honest

## Comparative and Superlative

81. Micky/calm/Minnie \_\_\_\_\_

82. I/good \_\_\_\_\_

83. The girl/tall/the boy \_\_\_\_\_

84. My teacher/nice/your teacher (=) \_\_\_\_\_

85. My brother/mean \_\_\_\_\_

86. My sister/selfish/my brother (<) \_\_\_\_\_

87. The school/big/my house (=) \_\_\_\_\_

88. My friend/anxious/I (<) \_\_\_\_\_

89. A mouse/bad/a cat \_\_\_\_\_

90. The president/rich \_\_\_\_\_

## Clothing

\*\*Bring Photo albums to help

### ➤ Agenda

- Vocab
- Exercise
- Game

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Nouns

- Clothes—vêtements
- Clothing—vêtements
- ~~Fabric—chiffon~~
- Shirt—chemise
- T-shirt—tricot
- Blouse—chemisier
- Dress Shirt--
- ~~Sweater—pull~~
- Dress—robe
- Skirt—jupe
- Shorts—short
  - Always plural
- Pants—patalon
  - Always plural
- Trousers—patalon
  - Always plural
- Jeans—jean
  - Always plural
- Dress pants—
  - Always plural
- Sweat pants—pantalon de sport
  - Always plural
- Pajamas—pyjama
  - Always plural
- Suit—costume
- ~~Suit jacket—veston~~
- Tie—cravate
- Uniform—uniforme
- Outfit—tenue, ensemble
- Diaper—couche
- Swimsuit—maillot de bain
- ~~Swim trunks—~~
- Jacket—blouson
- ~~Rain coat—imperméable~~
- Sock—chaussette
- Shoe—Chaussure
- Sandal—sandale
- ~~Flip Flop~~
- ~~High Heels—haut talon~~
- ~~Boot—boote~~
- ~~Tennis shoe—chaussure de tennis~~
- ~~Sneaker—chaussure de tenniss~~
- Accessory--accessoire

- Scarf—écharpe
- ~~Shawl~~
- ~~Headscarf~~
- ~~Bandana~~—foulard
- ~~Cap~~
- Hat—chapeau
- ~~Baseball cap~~—casquette
- Sunglasses—lunettes de soleil
- ~~Glasses~~—lunettes
- Belt—ceinture
- ~~Pocket~~—poche
- ~~Button~~—bouton
- Cane—canne
- Purse—bourse
- ~~Wallet~~—portefeuille
- ~~Briefcase~~—serviette
- Watch--montre
- Umbrella--parapluie
- Jewelry--bijoux
- Earring—boucle
- Necklace—collier
- Bracelet—bracelet
- Ring—anneau
- Nose Ring—anneau de nez

○ Verbs

- To wear→wore—porter

➤ What do you wear...

- To school?
- To a wedding?
- To play football?
- To the beach?

➤ Which is not like the others?

- EX: Blue, Person, Black, White
- Earring, bracelet, cane, necklace
- Scarf, hat, sunglasses, shirt
- Dress pants, blouse, tie, t-shirt
- sandal, shoe, sock, purse
- Skirt, jeans, shorts, dress shirt
- Dress pants, tie, suit, sweat pants
- watch, shirt, belt, umbrella

➤ Pictionary

- Divide into teams. One draw at a time. Team has 2 minutes to guess.

➤ Filler

○ Paper Dolls

- In partners, each get person. One partner asks, what is he/she wearing? Give 5 minutes. Then, switch paper. Other person asks what is he/she wearing?

○ Scattergories

- Jewelry
- Shoes
- Wear on head
- Accessories
- Wear on leg

○ Clothing Idioms

- Put yourself in my shoes
- He wears the pants in the family.—He's head of the household
- Work with Comparative and Superlative



## Clothing & Present Progressive

- Agenda
  - Vocab
  - Present Progressive
  - Reading
- Vocabulary
  - Verbs
    - To get dressed → got—habiller
    - To undress—déshabiller
    - To wear → wore--porter
    - To put on → put--activer
    - To take off → took--enlever
    - To change—changer
    - To try on--essayer
  - Adjectives
    - ~~Long Sleeve~~ manches longues
    - ~~Short sleeve~~ manches courtes
    - ~~Polka dotted~~ pointillé par polka
    - ~~Striped~~ rayé
    - Ugly—moche
    - Pretty—joli
    - Beautiful—belle
    - Handsome—beau
    - ~~Cute~~ mignon
    - ~~Adorable~~ adorable
    - Tight--serré
    - Loose--ample
    - Dirty--sale
    - Clean--propre
    - New—nouveau
    - Old—vieux
    - Expensive-- cher
    - Cheap—bon marché
  - Adverbs—Present Continuous
    - Now—maintenant
    - At the moment—en ce moment
    - currently—actuellement
  - Conjunctions
    - When—quand
    - While—pendant que
- Present Continuous/Progressive
  - To be (present tense) [am/are/is]+ Verb (infinitive without to)+ing
    - Is talking
  - 1. Action is happening now.
    - I am teaching.
    - You are listening.
  - 2. Future actions that are definite.
    - I am going to the beach tomorrow.
    - We are playing football tomorrow morning.
- Practice together
  - To wear. Usually use present progressive
  - What are you wearing?
  - What am I wearing?

- What are you doing tomorrow?
- Story—Uniform
  - Success—réussite
  - Style—style
  - Fashion—mode
  - Dress code—code vestimentaire
  - Whatever—tout ce que
  - State—état
  - Principle—provisueur
  - Latest—dernier
  - To back up—to support—soutenir
  - To agree—être d'accord
  - To disagree—ne pas être d'accord
  - To worry—s'inquiéter
  - To focus—concentrer
  - To prove—prouver
  - To order—commander

### Dressed for Success?

At my school, we don't have to wear uniforms, but we do have a dress code. At my school in Lemoyne, Pennsylvania, Principle Joseph Gargiulo follows the latest styles. But his interest has nothing to do with a love of fashion. He is just trying to back up Lemoyne Middle School's dress code. Lemoyne does not let students wear sandals and pajama pants. "Pajamas are for sleeping in," says Gargiulo. "School is a student's job. You don't go to your job in pajamas."

Student Leah Hawthorn disagrees with the dress code. She says that wearing whatever she likes helps her do good work at school. "You worry less about how you look," she says. "So you are more focused on what you're doing in class."

Pennsylvania is one of 28 states that has given schools the power to decide what students can wear to class. Many who are in charge of education believe that dress codes are good for students. They point to places such as the Los Angeles California to prove it. In 1994, schools in Los Angeles became the first public school system to order elementary and middle school students to wear uniforms. Soon after, the school district found that fewer students had been absent and fewer had been put out of school than before.

#### Questions

1. Why does Principle Joseph Gargiulo follow the latest styles?
2. What is the dress code at Lemoyne Middle School?
3. Does Leah Hawthorn agree with Principle Gargiulo? Why or why not?
4. Why does Leah think wearing whatever she likes help her do better in school?
5. What happened after schools in Los Angeles ordered students to wear uniforms?

#### ➤ Topic Sentence and Main Idea

- Main Idea—idée principale
  - What the paragraph is about
  - Paragraph--paragraphe
- Topic Sentence—le sujet phrase
- Title—titre

#### Questions

1. What is the topic sentence of the first paragraph?
2. What is the topic sentence of the second paragraph?
3. What is the topic sentence of the third paragraph?
4. What is the main idea of the first paragraph?
5. What is the main idea of the second paragraph?
6. What is the main idea of the third paragraph?
7. What is the main idea of the text?

#### ➤ Discussion

- Why do you wear a uniform to school?
- Do you like wearing a uniform to school? Why or why not?
- Do you do better in school because you wear a uniform?

#### ➤ Filler

- Conversation—Clothes Shopping
  - Merchant: Welcome to Comoros Boutique. How may I help you?
  - Amina: I am starting a new job, and I want a new outfit.
  - Merchant: I see.
  - Amina: I want to buy a new suit.

- Merchant: ok. What color?
- Amina: A gray suit.
- Merchant: I'm sorry, but I don't have any grey suits. I have some nice black suits, though.
- Amina: Can I try one on, please?
- Merchant: Yes, of course. Try these.
- Amina: Thank you. ... I'll take this one. Thank you for your help.
- Merchant: You're welcome. Have a great day.

## Progressives

### ➤ Agenda

- Review
- Exercise
- Conversation
- Past Progressive
- Exercise

### ➤ Review when use present simple and present progressive and the adverbs

### ➤ Conversation—Present simple or present progressive

- Fatima: Hi, Ramlata. What \_\_\_\_\_ (to do)?
- Ramlata: Right now, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to the market.
- Fatima: Do you always \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to the market after school?
- Ramlata: No. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ (to return) home, but today I \_\_\_\_\_ (to try on) a new outfit.
- Fatima: What style \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) it?
- Ramlata: It \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a loose, purple dress and a beautiful blue scarf.
- Fatima: Why \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) a new outfit?
- Ramlata: I \_\_\_\_\_ (to buy) new clothes because my sister \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) married next week.
- Fatima: Oh, good. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ (to wear) new clothes to weddings, too. See you later.

### ➤ Past Progressive

- To be (past tense) {was/were} + verb (infinitive without to) + ing
- 1. A person was doing an action in the past and the speaker doesn't know if the action was finished.
  - He was playing football.
- 2. An action was happening [past progressive] when another action interrupted (past simple)
  - I was brushing my teeth when my mother called me.
  - What is first action?
  - What is second action?
- If list two actions in the past progressive with coordinating conjunction, no 2<sup>nd</sup> to be.
  - I was walking and was talking.
  - I was walking, and I was talking.

### ➤ Write

- Write 3 sentences using past progressive.

### ➤ Exercise

- Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) when she \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) a sad man. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to rub) his eyes and \_\_\_\_\_ (to blink) them. Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ (to not know) what to do. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit) down and \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) the man. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to stand) up when her friend \_\_\_\_\_ (to return). Together, they \_\_\_\_\_ (to walk) up to the man, and Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) him why he was sad. He said he \_\_\_\_\_ (to read) a book when to boys \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) his glasses. Sarah and her friend \_\_\_\_\_ (to help) the man.

## Reading

### ➤ Agenda

- Review
- Reading

### ➤ Review

#### ○ Past

- The girl \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) that the boy \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch her)
- What \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) when you \_\_\_\_\_ (to hear) about the football game?
- When she heard the telephone, she \_\_\_\_\_ (to braid) her hair.

#### ○ Present

- I \_\_\_\_\_ (to exercise) today.
- I rarely \_\_\_\_\_ (to wear) pants, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (to try) on jeans now.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) dressed at the moment.

### ➤ Reading

Dress code—code vestimentaire

Recess—récréation

Injury—Blessure

Distraction—distraction

Budget—budget

Alternative—alternatif

Robot—robot

Outfit—

tenu/ensemble

Ability—capacité

Decision—décision

Purpose—but

Evidence—preuve

Fair—juste

Unfair—injuste

Itch—démangeaison

Comfortable—

comfortable

Uncomfortable

Practical—pratique

According to—selon

To cause—causer

To sprain—se fouler

To support—support

To follow—suivre

To afford—pouvoir se

permettre d'acheter

To prevent—empêcher

To distract—distraindre

To invest—investir

To allow—permettre

To express—exprimer

To propose—proposer

To struggle—se battre

To make ends meet—

To wear out—

éprouver/user

To clean—nettoyer

Finally—finalement

Immediately—

immédiatement

Actually--enfait

## Dress Code Injury

The school dress code caused student Jimmy Albert to spend his Friday night at the emergency room. Jimmy hurt his leg playing basketball during afternoon recess because the shoes he was wearing did not provide enough support for basic recess activities. Jimmy's injury is one of several reasons why it is unfair for students to have to follow a dress code. I suggest the school dress code be changed to allow jeans and sneakers.

According to our principal, the dress code prevents distractions and helps students focus on learning, but I disagree. Dressy clothes are distracting because the pants are itchy and dress shoes cause our feet to hurt. As a result, uncomfortable clothes actually distract students from schoolwork.

The second reason the dress code is unfair is because dress clothes are expensive. Many families at our school live on a tight budget and don't have money to invest on clothes that are only worn at school. This expense is unfair to parents who are struggling to make ends meet and students who can't afford to buy other clothes. Blue jeans are a practical alternative because they don't wear out quickly and they are easy to clean.

Finally, wearing a uniform makes students feel like robots. After a few weeks we get tired of seeing the same outfits and colors every day. Students should be allowed to express themselves through the clothes they choose to wear. In fact, making students conform to a dress code shows disrespect for the student's ability to make decisions.

A dress code does not help students focus on learning. Students like Jimmy shouldn't have to worry about hurting themselves during recess. I propose allowing jeans and sneakers to be part of the school dress code immediately, before another student gets hurt.

## Questions

1. Why did Jimmy have to go to the emergency room?
2. In the second paragraph, what evidence does the writer give that the dress code does not help students focus on learning?
3. What is the topic sentence of each paragraph?
4. What is the main idea of each paragraph?

5. What is the main idea of the text? Why is the student writing this letter? What does the writer want?
6. Do you agree with the writer? Why or why not?

## Sickness/Health

- Agenda
  - Vocabulary
  - Game
- Vocabulary
  - Sick—malade
  - Healthy—en bonne santé/sain
  - Pain—douleur
  - Prescription—ordonnance
  - Emergency—urgence
  - Emergency room—service des urgences
  - Hospital room—chambre d' hôpital
  - Ambulance--ambulance
  - People
    - Doctor—docteur
    - Nurse— infirmier
    - Pharmacist—pharmacien
    - Surgeon—chirurgien
    - Patient--patient
  - Disease—maladie
    - **\*\*Use with To have**
    - ~~Arthritis—arthrite~~
    - ~~Bronchitis—bronchite~~
    - Fever—fièvre
    - Flu—grippe
    - Malaria--paludisme
    - Migraine-migraine
    - Headache—névralgie
    - Earache—otite
    - Cold—rhume
    - Cough—toux
    - ~~Dizziness-vertig~~
    - ~~Bouché—stuffed up~~
    - Cancer—cancer
    - ~~Diarrhea—~~
    - ~~Typhoid—~~
    - ~~Chicken pox~~
    - ~~Hepatitis~~
  - Injury--blessure
    - Scratch—égratignure
    - Mosquito bite—morsure de moustique
    - ~~Cut—coupure~~
    - ~~Blood~~
  - Medication-- médicament
    - Antibiotics—antibiotiques
    - Aspirin—aspirine
    - Shot—injection
    - Cough drop—pastille
    - Cough syrubar—sirop pour la toux
    - ~~Cast—~~
    - Bandage—sparadrap
    - Kleenex—mouchoir

- Handkerchief—mouchoir
- Tissue—mouchoir
- ~~X ray—les rayons x~~
- Stitches—points de suture

○ Verbs

- To sneeze—éternuer
- To blow one's nose (blew)--moucher
- ~~To shiver—frissonner~~
- To cough—tousse
- To vomit—vomir
- To throw up (threw)—vomir
- To cure—guérir
- ~~To apply—mettre~~
- ~~To put on (put)—mettre~~
- To break (broke)—casser
- To sprain—fouler
- To take care of oneself (took)—soigner
- To burn—bruler
- ~~To bump (head)—cogner~~
- To cut oneself (cut)—couper
- To faint—évanouir
- ~~To twist—tordre~~
- To examine—examiner
- To breathe—respirer
- To feel (felt)--ressentir
- ~~To operate—opérer~~
- To fall (fell)--tomber
- To hurt (hurt)—faire mal
- To die—mourir
- ~~To heal—guérir~~
- ~~To diagnose—~~
- ~~To suffer from—~~
- ~~To treat~~
- ~~To bleed~~
- ~~To prevent~~
- ~~To injure~~

➤ Old Maid Vocabulary Game

- Write English vocab words on one set of cards and French translation on another. Make one card the Old Maid Card
- Group students into groups of 7 or 8. Deal out vocab cards. With their cards, students match the French word to English word. They discard the pairs.
- Explain rules. Each student holds remaining cards up to next person who draws one card. You don't want the old maid card. Each time you draw, if you have a match with the new card, discard those cards. Repeat until all cards gone.



## Present Perfect

### ➤ Agenda

- Vocab Words
- Present Perfect
- 
- Adverbs—Present Perfect
  - Just--juste
  - Yet—déjà/ pas encore (not yet)
  - Never--jamais
  - Ever—jamais (questions)
  - Already-- déjà
  - Recently--récemment
  - Still—encore/toujours
- Prepositions
  - Since—depuis
  - For—pour

### ➤ Timeline

- Draw small timeline on board. Review when past, present, future.

### ➤ Present Perfect

- To have (in present tense) + past participle
- Past Participle-usually the same as the past tense

I	Have
You	Have
He/She/It	Has
We	Have
They	Have

- EX: I have played basketball.  
I have swum in the ocean.
- Use:
  - Actions that happened in the past when time is not known
    - I have traveled to Africa. I traveled to Africa in 2014.
  - For Action that started in the past and continues into the present. (Emphasis on action/result)
    - Draw on timeline
    - We have had two quizzes.
    - They have studied the lesson.

### ➤ Use with Adverbs.

- They have **never** had malaria.
- She has **recently** vomited.
- They have **already** visited the doctor.
- I have **just** coughed.

### ➤ Form the Negative

- To have + not + past participle
- I have not passed the BAC
- With Adverbs:
  - I have not died **yet**.
  - He **still** has not died.

### ➤ Yes/No Question

- To have + subject + past participle
- Have you studied English?
- Have you traveled to France?
- With Adverb

- Have you **ever** had malaria?
- Have you **already** visited the doctor?

➤ Students Write

- Students write sentences using adverbs or prepositions for situation
- I am a student...
- They have been married for six months, and they...
- The boy is three years old, and he ...
- She is sick, and she...
- You have passed the BAC, but you ...
- I have started a new job, and I ...
- He is tired...

## Present Perfect 2

- Agenda
  - Irregular Past Participles
  - Exercise
  - Reading
- Review Form of Present Perfect
  - To have + past participle
- Irregular Past Participles

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Past Tense</b>	<b>Past Participle</b>
To be	Was/were	Been
To speak	Spoke	Spoken
To write	Wrote	Written
To begin	Began	Begun
To forget	Forgot	Forgotten
To give	Gave	Given
To know	Knew	Known
To wake up	Woke up	Woken up
To get	Got	Gotten
To lie down	Lay	Lain
To take	Took	Taken
To eat	Ate	Eaten
To drink	Drank	Drunk
To go	Went	Gone
To run	Ran	Run
To swim	Swam	Swum
To sing	Sang	Sung
To drive	Drove	Driven
To wear	Wore	Worn
To do	Did	Done
To see	Saw	Seen
To break	Broke	Broken
To blow	Blew	blown
To throw	Threw	thrown
To fall	Fell	Fallen
To ride	Rode	Ridden
To choose	Chose	Chosen
To fly	Flew	Flown
To show	Showed	Shown

- Practice with Irregulars
  - Rewrite sentence using present perfect
    1. He breaks his leg.
    2. She has a headache.
    3. They drive the car.
    4. I blow my nose.
    5. The doctor writes a prescription.
    6. We do not see the nurse.

7. I am sick.

➤ Present Perfect Versus Simple Past

- Usually use the simple past
- Simple Past

1. Action that started and finished in the past

- Present Perfect

1. Action that started in the past but continues in the present

➤ Reading

- Vocabulary

1. To attract—attirer

2. Case-cas

3. Chemical—chimique

4. Chills—coup de froid

5. Climate--climat

6. To develop—développer

7. Device--appareil

8. To discover—découvrir

9. To eradicate--éradiquer

10. To fight—lutter contre

11. To infect—contaminer

12. Insecticide—insecticide

13. To kill--tuer

14. Method—méthode

15. To prevent--empêcher

16. Project—projet

17. Researcher—chercheur

18. Severe--grave

19. To spread--propagation

20. To trap—piéger

21. To treat--traiter

The smell of old socks leaves most people holding their noses with disgust. But scientists have discovered it is just the opposite for mosquitoes. Researchers have found that the smell of old socks is actually extremely attractive to mosquitoes. Dr. Fredros Okumu, head of the research project at Tanzania's Ifakara Health Institute, expects to use this new information to develop a device that will attract and trap mosquitoes. He hopes this unusual method will help prevent and fight malaria.

Malaria is a disease that is spread by infected mosquitoes. **Symptoms** of malaria can include chills, fever, and vomiting. The disease can spread easily and quickly. One mosquito carrying malaria can infect numerous people. While malaria can exist in moderate climates, it is more severe in tropic and sub-tropic climates like Africa. In parts of Africa, malaria can infect an entire population. Many of these populations live in rural areas with limited access to health and medical care.

Malaria can be prevented and treated, but many African nations don't have the money to fight it. While the global infection rate of malaria is continuing to drop, there are still over 220 million cases of malaria each year. Nearly 800,000 of these cases result in people dying, the majority of them being children in Africa.

Many methods have already been developed to kill mosquitoes. Bed nets treated with insecticide have **reduced** the number of malaria cases. The smelly mosquito sock may help, too. "The global goal of eradication of malaria will not be possible without new technologies," said Okumu, who has been working on this project for two years. Okumu mixed eight chemicals to create the best smell to attract the mosquitoes to the trap. Then, he experimented with poisons until he found one that kills up to 95% of mosquitoes. Tests showed that traps scented with the odor of human feet attracted four times as many mosquitoes as a person, Okumu said.

- Questions

1. What smell is attractive to mosquitoes?
2. Who will develop a device using the smell mosquitoes are attracted to?
3. What is malaria?
4. What is the meaning of symptoms in the second paragraph?
  - A. symptôme B. cause C. système D. allusion
5. I want to know about the number of people with malaria. Which paragraph should I look to find the information?
6. What is the meaning of reduced in the fourth paragraph?
  - A. augmenter B. éliminer C. automatiser D. réduire
7. How did Dr. Okumu make the smell?
8. What do tests show about the traps Dr. Okumu developed?

## Present Perfect 3

- Agenda
  - Exercise
  - Have you ever game
  - Reading
- Present Perfect Versus Simple Past
  - Usually use the simple past
  - Simple Past
    1. Action that started and finished in the past
  - Present Perfect
    1. Action that started in the past but continues in the present
- Exercise—Past or Present Perfect
  - Martha is a very sick. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) a fever for 3 days. Two days ago, Martha \_\_\_\_\_ (to faint), and yesterday morning, she \_\_\_\_\_ (to wake up) with a headache and a cough. Plus, she \_\_\_\_\_ (to throw up) 3 times since Monday. So, she \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to the doctor yesterday, and he \_\_\_\_\_ (to examine) her. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ (to write) her a prescription for some antibiotics, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (to not take) it to the pharmacist yet. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to already forget) about it.
- Have you ever game
  - Students must mingle and ask Have you ever questions regarding the activities below. If the person says yes, they write that person's name in the name column and ask one follow-up question and write the answer in the last column.

Action	Name	More Information
Ride a motorcycle		
Ride a bicycle		
Eat at a restaurant		
Move houses		
Sing for people		
Work		
Be in the hospital		
Drive a car		
Play basketball		
Travel to Anjouan		
Eat fish		
Break arm		
Read a book		
Watch a movie		
Cook madaba		
Swim in the ocean		
Have malaria		

- Reading
  - Vocabulary
    - Bone--os
    - Chemical—chimique
    - Consequence--conséquence
    - Defense--défense
    - Fatal--fatal
    - Heart--coeur
    - Lung--poumon
    - Organ--organe
    - Smart--intelligent

- Throat--gorge
- Tobacco—tabac
- To try--essayer

### How Smoking Affects Your Health

There are no good reasons to start smoking. The body doesn't need tobacco the way it needs food, water, sleep, and exercise. In fact, many of the chemicals in cigarettes, like nicotine and cyanide, are actually poisons that can cause a person to die.

The body is smart. It goes on the defense when it has been poisoned. For this reason, many people find it takes many tries to get started smoking: First-time smokers often feel pain or burning in the throat and lungs, and some people feel sick or even throw up the first few times they try cigarettes.

The consequences of this poisoning happen slowly. Over many years, smoking causes people to develop health problems like cancer, emphysema (breakdown of lung tissue), organ damage, and heart disease. These diseases limit a person's ability to be normally active — and can be fatal. Each time a person smokes, that single cigarette takes about 5 to 20 minutes off the person's life. Smokers not only develop wrinkles and yellow teeth, they also lose bone density, which increases their risk of osteoporosis, a condition that causes older people to become bent over and their bones to break more easily. Smokers also tend to be less active than nonsmokers because smoking affects lung power. Studies show that smokers get more colds, flu, bronchitis, and pneumonia than nonsmokers. And people with certain health conditions, like asthma, become more sick if they smoke (and often if they're just around people who smoke). Smoking also affects the body's ability to produce collagen, so injuries will heal more slowly in smokers than nonsmokers.

#### ○ Questions

1. What are nicotine and cyanide?
2. What do first-time smokers usually feel when they smoke a cigarette?
3. What is the main idea of the third paragraph?
4. What are 3 consequences of smoking?
5. What is the consequence of smoking affecting the body's ability to produce collagen?
6. What is the author's purpose for writing this text? (Why did the author write this text?)

#### ○ True or False (vrai ou faux)

1. The body needs cigarettes.
2. There are poisons in cigarettes.
3. Smoking can cause cancer.
4. Smoking cigarettes turns a smoker's teeth yellow.
5. Smokers get sick more often than nonsmokers.

## Present Perfect and Sickness

### ➤ Agenda

- Conversation
- Listening
- Speaking

### ➤ Branching Dialogue

- Doctor: Hi, Sarah. How are you feeling?
- Patient: Not good.
- Doctor: What hurts?
- Patient: My head hurts, and I have a stomachache.
- Doctor: Have you thrown up?
- Patient: No.
- Doctor: Do you have a fever?
- Patient: Yes, I do.
- Doctor: Do you have any new mosquito bites?

Patient: Yes. I have thrown up 2 times today.

Doctor: Do you have a cough?

Patient: Yes, I do.

Doctor: Ok, I think you have the flu. I will examine you and if you have the flu, I will write you a prescription so that you feel better.

- Patient: Yes, I have a new mosquito bite on my back.
- Doctor: Ok. I want to examine you for malaria.

### ➤ Listening

- Last week, Irchad played football. He was running and fell, spraining his wrist and cutting his hand. His friend Said called an ambulance to take John to the hospital, but the ambulance has been broken for 3 weeks. Instead, Irchad's father drove him to the emergency room at the hospital. The doctor examined Irchad and gave him stitches for his cuts. Irchad has been in the hospital for 3 days. His cuts have already healed, but his wrist still hurts. The nurse says Irchad needs to rest so that he will feel better.
- Questions:
  1. What did Irchad hurt?
  2. Why didn't the ambulance take Irchad to the hospital?
  3. Where did Irchad's father drive Irchad?
  4. What did the doctor do for Irchad's cuts?
  5. What has already healed?
  6. Who says Irchad needs to rest?

### ➤ Speaking

- Ask students have you ever had a sickness? Ask 1 follow-up question

### ➤ Filler

- 2 Truths and a Lie. Write using past perfect



## Past Perfect

- Agenda
  - Review
  - Past Perfect
  - Exercise
  - Negative
- Ask random students—Have you ever...
  - Babysit
  - Teach
  - Read a book
  - Cook madaba
  - Swim in the ocean
  - Take a taxi
  - Get married
  - Move houses
  - Work
  - Braid hair
  - Wear jeans
  - Wear a suit
  - Be lazy
  - Be very happy
  - Be generous
  - Have malaria
  - Have a cough
  - Have a fever
- Review Tenses
  - Past Simple
    - An action started and ended in the past.
  - Past Progressive
    - To be (past tense) {was/were} + verb (infinitive without to) + ing
    - 1. A person was doing an action in the past and the speaker doesn't know if the action was finished.
      - He was playing football.
    - 2. An action was happening [past progressive] when another action interrupted (past simple)
      - I was brushing my teeth when my mother called me.
      - What is first action?
      - What is second action?
    - If list two actions in the past progressive with coordinating conjunction, no 2<sup>nd</sup> to be.
      - I was walking and ~~was~~ talking.
      - I was walking, and I was talking.
  - Present Perfect
    - Actions that happened in the past when time is not known
      - I have traveled to Africa. I traveled to Africa in 2014.
    - For Action that started in the past and continues into the present. (Emphasis on action/result)
      - Draw on timeline
      - We have had two quizzes.
      - They have studied the lesson.
- Past Perfect
  - To have (past tense)+ Past Participle
  - Action that happened [simple past perfect] before another action [simple past] in the past
  - Usually use past simple but past perfect emphasizes action
    - To emphasize—accentuer

- EX: I had read the lesson before I went to school.  
You had eaten the food before you played basketball.

➤ Conjunction

- Because—parce que

➤ Adverbs

- By the time—au moment où
- Just--juste
- Not Yet—pas encore
- Never--jamais
- Ever—jamais (questions)
- Already-- déjà
- Recently--récemment
- Still—encore/toujours

➤ Write 3 of your own sentences using past perfect

➤ Fill in the blank with the past perfect

- By the time I was 10, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to break) my arm.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) the lesson because she had a test.
- Dan \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) sick for 3 days before he got better.
- My brother \_\_\_\_\_ (to never drive) a car before my father taught him.
- The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (to already teach) the students.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (to never taste) madaba before I came to Comoros.
- The family \_\_\_\_\_ (to just finish) eating when I returned.
- Irchad \_\_\_\_\_ (to throw up) three times before the doctor examined him.

➤ Negative

- Had + Not + past participle
- I had not written the lesson before the teacher asked a question.
- She had not bought new clothes for the wedding because she did not have money.

➤ Write 2 negative past perfect sentences

## Past Perfect 2

### ➤ Agenda:

- Writing
- Yes/No Questions
- Exercises

### ➤ Writing--Write a letter

- First, match the problem with what had happened. Then, finish writing the letter using the past perfect and the problems and actions given below.
- Problem
  - Had a headache
  - The ambulance took me to the hospital
  - The doctor examined me
  - The surgeon gave me stitches.
  - The pharmacy was closed.
- What had happened
  - Threw up 3 times in the ambulance
  - Cut my head when I fainted
  - Fainted
  - It was a holiday
  - Fell and hurt my head
- Hi, Friend,  
How are you? I'm not good. Last weekend, I was very sick. I had many problems.  
EX: I had a headache because I had fallen and hurt my head.

I hope your weekend was better than my weekend.

Your Friend,

Erin

### ➤ Yes/No Questions

- Had + Subject + Past Participle
- She had been sick for 3 days before she went to the hospital. → Had she been sick for 3 days before she went to the hospital?

### ➤ Write 2 questions using the past perfect

### ➤ Finish the sentence...

- I failed the English test \_\_\_\_\_.
- I went swimming \_\_\_\_\_
- By the time I was 15, \_\_\_\_\_
- I sneezed after \_\_\_\_\_
- I changed outfits \_\_\_\_\_

### ➤ Rewrite in

- Present Perfect
  - I wash my clothes.
  - My brother ran to Mbeni.
  - The girl is changing clothes.
- Past Perfect
  - I am happy.
  - Adam vomited.
  - We are drinking water.
- EX: The girl is changing clothes

### ➤ Write yes/no questions for the sentences above using the correct present perfect or past perfect tense.

## Perfect Tenses and Cause and Effect

### ➤ Agenda

- Review
- Reading
- Cause and Effect

### ➤ Review—Fill in the blank with the correct tense—simple past, present perfect, or past perfect

- When Fatima got home, Sitti \_\_\_\_\_ (to already finish) the lesson.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (you/to eat) before you left home this morning?
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (to not see) my family since June.
- Nasfati returned home after Hedji \_\_\_\_\_ (to wash) clothes.
- By the time he was 11, my brother \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) malaria.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) very sad because my father had not talked to me since yesterday.
- Hassane \_\_\_\_\_ (to taste) Kooskooma.
- Yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) a cold, and I threw up twice.
- Rouchda \_\_\_\_\_ (to cough) for three days by the time she went to see the doctor.

### ➤ Reading—Goldilocks and the Three Bears.

#### ○ Vocabulary:

- Fairy tale—conte d fées
- Bear—ours
- Bed--parterre
- To break (broke/broken)—
- Cold—froid
- To come (came/come)—venir
- To creep (crept)—ramper
- Curious--curieux
- Door—porte
- To growl--grogner
- Hard—dur
- Hot--chaud
- To make (made)—faire
- Meanwhile—pendant ce temps/entre-temps
- To roar--beugler
- To skip (skipped)—sauter
- Soft—muelleux
- Stairs—escalier
- Teddy Bear—ours en peluche
- To try—essayer
- To wonder—demander
- Woods—forêt

#### ○ Text:

#### **Goldilocks and the Three Bears**

Once upon a time, there were three bears who lived in a little house deep inside the woods. There was Papa Bear, Mama Bear, and Baby Bear. Baby bear was always hungry. One morning, Mama Bear made some porridge to eat for breakfast. It was too hot to eat, so the three bears decided to go for a walk while it cooled down.

A little girl named Goldilocks was also in the woods that day. She had long blond hair. She was walking along when she saw the little house. Goldilocks was a curious little girl, and she wondered who lived there. She went up to the front door and knocked. When no one answered, she pushed open the door. “What a beautiful little house!” she said as she went inside.

Goldilocks went into the kitchen and saw the porridge. “Mmmmm! That looks good, and I’m feeling very hungry,” she said. She sat down and picked up a spoon. First, she tried Papa Bear’s bowl, but the porridge was too hot. Then, she tried Mama Bear’s bowl, but it was too cold. Finally, she tried Baby Bear’s bowl, and it was just right. “Delicious!” she said, and she ate it all up.

After her big breakfast, Goldilocks was feeling very tired and wanted to sit down to rest. First, she tried Papa Bear's chair, but it was too tall. Then, she tried Mama Bear's chair, but it was too short. Finally, Goldilocks sat down in Baby Bear's chair, and it was just right. Suddenly, the chair broke and Goldilocks fell to the floor! "Oh no!" she said as she stood up.

Goldilocks decided to go upstairs and find somewhere to sleep. She went in to the bedroom and saw three beds in a row. First, she tried Papa Bear's bed, but it was too hard. Then, she tried Mama Bear's bed, but it was too soft. Finally, she tried Baby Bear's bed, and it was just right. She lay down and soon went to sleep.

Meanwhile, the three bears were on their way home after their long walk. Baby Bear was now very hungry. Baby Bear ran into the house and ran into the kitchen. He looked inside his bowl and started to cry. "Oh no! Someone has eaten all my porridge," he cried.

Papa Bear and Mama Bear came in and looked into their bowls. "Someone has been eating our porridge too," Papa Bear growled.

The three bears then looked at their chairs. "Someone has been sitting in my chair," growled Papa Bear.

"Someone has been sitting in my chair," growled Mama Bear.

"Someone has been sitting in my chair, and it's broken into pieces!" cried Baby Bear.

Papa Bear looked at Mama Bear. "Someone has been in our house, eaten our porridge and broken the chair," said Papa Bear.

"Let's go upstairs and see if anyone is there," said Mama Bear.

So, the three bears crept up the stairs to the top. Papa Bear slowly opened the bedroom door and the three bears looked in.

Goldilocks was so tired she had fallen into a deep sleep. She had not heard the three bears climbing the stairs! She had not heard the three bears coming home!

The three bears went over and looked at their beds. "Someone has been sleeping in my bed," said Papa Bear.

"Someone has been sleeping in my bed," said Mama Bear.

"Someone is still sleeping in my bed!" said Baby Bear.

"What?" roared Papa Bear

Baby Bear looked at Goldilocks holding his teddy bear. "Wake up!" he shouted. Goldilocks woke up and saw the three bears beside the bed.

"Who are you?" roared Papa Bear.

"Who are you?" roared Mama Bear.

"Who are you and what are you doing in my bed?" squeaked Baby Bear.

Goldilocks looked at the bears and said, "I'm so sorry!" Then, she jumped out of bed and ran quickly down the stairs and out of the little house. Goldilocks ran as fast as she could, all the way home.

#### ○ Questions

- What happened in the story?
  - To summarize--résumer
  - Summary--résumé
  - Plot
- Where does the story take place?
  - Setting
- Why did the 3 bears leave their house?
- Where did Goldilocks see the porridge?
- Did Goldilocks eat Mommy Bear's Porridge? Why not?
- After eating the porridge, what does Goldilocks do?
- What happened to Baby Bear's chair?
- Did Goldilocks sleep in Daddy Bear's bed? Why not?
- What did Baby Bear do when he saw his porridge was gone?
- Who did the 3 bears find in their bedroom?
- What did Goldilocks do when she woke up?

#### ➤ Cause and Effect

- Cause—cause
- Effect--effet
- Make Chart

Cause	Effect
Porridge was too hot	The 3 bears left their house
She was hungry	Ate porridge
She was tired	Sit in Chair
Someone had his porridge	Baby bear cried
Saw the bears	Goldilocks ran away

- Fill in chart
  - Why did the three bears leave their house?
  - Why did Goldilocks eat the porridge?
  - Why did she sit in the chair?
  - Why did she sleep in the bed?
- Write sentence using past perfect tense
  - The 3 bears left their house because the porridge had been too hot.

## Parts of Speech

### ➤ Agenda

- Parts of Speech
- Quiz Next Class (sickness vocab, perfect tense, part of speech)

### Parts of speech—partie du discours

#### ➤ Noun-nom

- Person—personne
- Place—lieu
- Thing/object—choses/ objet
- Answer what and who?
- What are some examples?

#### ➤ Adjectives—adjectif

- Modify (modifier) nouns
- Answer questions: Which one, what kind, how many?
- Usually come before noun
  - EX: big car
- What are some examples?

#### ➤ Verb—verbe

- Action—action
- Trait—trait
- EX: I eat food. I am a teacher
- What are some examples?

#### ➤ Adverb—adverbe

- Modify verbs, adjectives, or other (autre) adverbs
- Usually end in ly
- Answer when, where, how, why?
- EX: Very big car

#### ➤ Preposition

- Connects a word to a substantive

#### ➤ Subject--sujet

- What or who does action of sentence

#### ➤ Forming Sentence

- To form a sentence, need a subject and a verb
- EX: I eat. Hadija is a student. Hakim walks to school. They study English.

#### ➤ Identify Parts of speech

- A baby walks slowly.
- The hungry man eats quickly
- You rarely go to school on Fridays.
- When Fatima got home, Sitti had finished the lesson.
- Nasfati returned home after Hedji had already washed clothes.
- Yesterday, I coughed loudly.
- She still has not traveled to France.
- I have had a very bad headache for 2 days.
- The athletic girl plays football very well.

#### ➤ Students write 3 sentences about anything they want.

- When finish, pick 7-8 to write 1 sentence on the board. Identify parts of speech of those sentences.

#### ➤ Quiz next class

- 20 Questions
- Sickness vocab
- Perfect Tense
- Parts of Speech

## Parts of Speech 2

- Agenda
  -
- Reading
  - Yesterday, I ate chicken that my mother had cooked the day before. This morning, I woke up with a bad stomachache. I have thrown up five times since I woke up. I will never eat chicken again.
- Write Sentences
  - I give Part of Speech, they write sentence to fit.
  - Subject-Verb
  - Adjective-Subject-Verb
  - Adjective-Subject-Verb-Adverb
  - S-V-Adv
  - S-V-Adj-N
  - Adj-S-V-Adv-N
  - Adj-S-V-Adv-Adj-Noun



## Gerund

**\*\*Need paper for quiz**

### ➤ Agenda

- Quiz
- Gerunds
- Exercise

### ➤ Quiz—Sickness Vocab, Perfect Tenses, Parts of Speech

#### ○ For 1:

1. Casser—to break
2. Ressentir—to feel
3. Ordonnance-prescription
4. Médicament—Medication
5. Toux—cough
6. Paludisme—malaria
7. Points de suture—stitches
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/to ever faint)?
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to exercise)
10. Baraka \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) basketball before she studied the lesson.
11. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to feel) sick since Monday.
12. I went to the hospital because I \_\_\_\_\_ (to break) my leg.
13. Yesterday, the handsome man played football. He was running and fell, cutting his hand. It hurt very badly. His best friend helped him.

#### ○ For 2

1. Bruler—to burn
2. Mourir—to die
3. Blessure—injury
4. Fièvre—fever
5. Rhume—cold
6. Névralgie—headache
7. Sparadrap—bandage
8. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) the lesson before she went to school.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ (he/to already change) clothes?
10. After we \_\_\_\_\_ (to fall), we breathed.
11. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to dance).
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) everyday for 6 years.
13. My sick mother will go to the hospital tomorrow. She has had a bad cold since last week. She is very sick.

### ➤ Gerunds

### ➤ Gerund

- Verb + ing
  1. To dance→Dancing
  2. To sing→singing
- Acts as a Noun
  1. English is difficult.
  2. Dancing is difficult
- Examples.
  1. I watch dancing on TV.
  2. Dancing is good.
  3. Playing in the streets is dangerous.
  4. Singing well is difficult for me.
  5. Studying English is good.
  6. I like learning English.

- Ask for verbs

1. Make into gerund. Then, make sentence.

➤ Write two sentences using a gerund.

➤ Gerund or Not?

- I like washing clothes.
- He is swimming in the ocean.
- Vomiting is not good.
- I want to stop coughing.
- The man was sneezing.
- Breaking an arm hurts.
- Do you like being sick/
- My cooking tastes good.

## Gerunds 2

- Agenda
    -
  - Vocabulary
    - Prepositions
      - After
      - Before
      - For
      - With
      - Without
      - Since
      - By
      - Despite
      - While
    - Adverbs
      - Loudly
      - Quietly
      - Slowly
      - Quickly
    - Verbs
      - To fish
      - To catch (caught)
      - To farm
      - To grow (grew/grown)
      - To sell
      - To cry
      - To laugh
      - To smile
      - To ask
      - To pray
      - To swim
      - To dance
      - To sing
      - To draw
      - To smoke
      - To love
      - To hate
      - To like
      - Verbs-Followed by Gerund
        - To dislike
        - To quit (quit)
        - To enjoy
        - ~~To admit~~
        - ~~To discuss~~
        - ~~To deny~~
        - ~~To suggest~~
        - ~~To understand~~
        - ~~To miss~~
        - ~~To mind~~
        - ~~To practice~~
        - ~~To consider~~
- Review form of Gerund

- Verb + ing
- Acts as a noun
- Gerunds
  - Used after:
    - To dislike
    - To quit
    - To enjoy
  - Used after prepositions
    - After dancing, I went to the market.
- What do you enjoy doing?—students write
  - Example: To relax
    - To relax, I enjoy reading a book
  - On weekends
    - On weekends, I enjoy...
  - For exercise
  - With friends
  - In school
- Exercise (Gerund or Present Simple)
  - By \_\_\_\_\_ (to farm), my father \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) a lot of money. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) not rich, but he also \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) not poor. He used to b a fisherman, but he quit \_\_\_\_\_ (to fish) 3 years ago and started \_\_\_\_\_ (to farm). He enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ (to grow) tomatoes, carrots, and other food. It is difficult work, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (to smile) as he works. Sometimes, I hear him \_\_\_\_\_ (to sing) loudly. Despite \_\_\_\_\_ (to laugh) at him, I also \_\_\_\_\_ (to sing), sometimes with \_\_\_\_\_ (to dance).

## Participles

- Agenda
  -
- Participle
  - Verb + iing
  - Acts as adjective
    - The dancing girl, the singing woman
  - Examples:
    - The woman singing is beautiful.
    - The dancing girl sings.
    - Singing loudly, I walk to school.
    - I smile at the crying baby.
    - The studying boy was silent.
    - The mother kissed her sleeping baby.
    - Having graduated, I moved to Comoros.
    - Having passed the Baccalaureate, you went to university.
- Write
  - Using the verbs, write 2 sentences for each—1 using the verb as a gerund and 1 as a participle
    - To swim
    - To fish
    - To laugh
    - To smoke
- Participle or Gerund?
  - The student talking raised his hand.
  - I hate dancing, despite liking music.
  - Running quickly, the boy played football.
  - My father enjoys farming.
  - The man fishing is my brother.
  - Before eating, I wash my hands.
  - Since finishing school, I have started studying English.

## Gerunds and Participles

### ➤ Agenda

○

### ➤ Reading

#### ○ Welcome to my Village

- Hi. Welcome! I'm so happy you could come to my village today. Let me introduce you to my family and my village.

That woman (1) washing clothes is my mother. Her name is Baraka. She is hardworking but also funny. She dislikes (2) washing clothes, but she does it anyway because she takes care of her family. She's a really good mom. She makes me laugh when I feel like (3) crying. I'm very happy she's my mother.

That boy (4) praying is my brother Mouhammad. He is ten, six years younger than me. He enjoys (5) playing football and (6) fishing. Despite (7) being so young, Mouhammad is very intelligent. He receives good marks in school, and he studies frequently.

Quietly (8) reading a book, my father is sitting in that brown chair. He is resting after (9) finishing his job today. Before (10) quitting (11) smoking, he was very unhealthy. However, now he exercises every day. Sometimes, he exercises by (12) swimming and sometimes by (13) running.

For (14) having a small family, I am very happy. I love my family very much.

### ➤ Speaking

1	I enjoy...
2	I dislike...
3	My friend enjoys....
4	My friend dislikes...
5	The _____ girl/boy is funny.
6	The girl/boy _____ is funny.

### ➤ Listening Activity

- I verbally ask question, they write response.
- What do you do every day?
- What did you do yesterday?
- What are you wearing?
- What have you quit doing?
- What do you enjoy doing?
- What do you dislike doing?

### ➤ Filler

#### ○ Speaking

- With partners. Number 1 and 2
- 1s ask question first. 2s answer
  - What does your mother enjoy doing?
  - What does she dislike doing?
  - What does your father enjoy doing?
  - What does he dislike doing?
- Change

## Infinitives

- Vocabulary
  - \*infinitive follows these verbs
  - To forget
  - To need
  - To learn
  - To want
  - To agree
  - To ask
  - To manage
  - To prepare
  - To wish
  - To happen
  - To demand
  - To deserve
- Infinitive
  - To + verb
  - Examples:
    - Jane studies everyday to learn English.
    - He wants to eat.
  - Can be:
    - A noun
      - To pray is good.
    - An adjective (which one, what kind, how many?)
      - Ali is the man to drive us to the beach.
    - An adverb (when, where, how, why?)
      - I leave my house to pray.
- Tell me part of speech of infinitive
  - I bought the car to make you happy.
  - He doesn't like to run after eating.
  - The movie to watch is Dora.
  - To learn to drive is difficult.
- On board, give students verb and part of speech. They have to write a sentence.

## Modals

- Review Parts of Speech
  - a. Subject
    - i. What or who does action of sentence.
    - ii. I walk. He eats.
  - b. Verb
    - i. Action—action
    - ii. Trait—trait
    - iii. EX: I eat food. I am a teacher
    - iv. What are some examples?
  - c. Auxiliary Verb
    - i. ALWAYS work with another verb in a sentence.
    - ii. I will go to school tomorrow.

Affirmative Modal	Negative Modal	Use
Can/Could	Cannot=can't/ Could not=couldn't	Ability Request of Ability
May/Might	May not/ Might not	Request of Permission Possibility
Must/Have to	Do not (Don't) have to	Obligation
	Must not=mustn't	Prohibition
Should/Ought To	Shouldn't	Recommendation

## Can/Could

- Vocab
  - WITH SPORTS?
  - If
  - Lucky
- Can
  - ability=to know how to/to be able to
  - I can cook madaba
  - I can wash my clothes.
  - He can swim.
  - We can speak English.
- Practice
  - Can you sing a song in English?
  - Say the alphabet?
  - Say the alphabet backwards?
  - Introduce yourself in English?
  - Remember all of your classmates' names?
  - Count to 20 in English?
  - Stand up and touch your toes?
  - Pat your head and rub your stomach at the same time?
- Negative
  - Cannot=can't
    - He cannot ride a bike.
    - I cannot speak French.
- Questions
  - Can + subject+ verb (without to)
  - Can he swim?
  - Can you speak English?



➤ Could

- Past tense can
- Possibility/conditional
- I could swim yesterday, but I can't today.

➤ Practice

- I \_\_\_\_\_ help you with your homework now.
- Five years ago, I \_\_\_\_\_ play football.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ get 20/20 on the next test.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ score a goal if I practice.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ speak English well.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ run fast when he was six years old.
- The basketball team \_\_\_\_\_ go to the Olympics this year if they are lucky.
- \_\_\_\_\_ we play football tomorrow?

➤ Make questions for the sentences.

Cannot=can't

## Must/Have To

- Must=Have to
  - Obligation
  - Must-present or future
  - Have to—past, present, or future
  - In class, you must speak in English.
  - I must practice my English after school.
  - Yesterday, I had to go to school
- Write:
  - A good teacher must \_\_\_\_\_
  - A good mother/father must \_\_\_\_\_
  - A good friend must \_\_\_\_\_
- Negative
  - Must not=mustn't=can't
    - Prohibition
  - Don't have to
    - No obligation
  - You don't have to write the exercise if you don't want to.
- Practice
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ go there on your own. It's very dangerous.
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ come if you don't feel like it.
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ go home after school to help my mother.
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ be late to class.
  - I don't have English tomorrow, so I \_\_\_\_\_ go to school.
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ work tomorrow.
  - Comorian students \_\_\_\_\_ wear uniforms when they go to school.
  - When you come to America, you \_\_\_\_\_ come and see me.
  - Last night, Bouchra was sick. We \_\_\_\_\_ to call a doctor.
  - When the teacher is speaking, you \_\_\_\_\_ talk.
  - In class, you \_\_\_\_\_ use your telephone.
- Questions
- **WITH ENVIRONMENT**
  - 4 obligations
  - 4 prohibitions
  - 8 things ok
- For questions 9-20 Complete the sentences using must, mustn't, have to , don't have to, has to, doesn't have to, should or shouldn't
- 
- 9, You \_\_\_\_\_ watch t.v all day. It is not good
- 10, We \_\_\_\_\_ to be on time in the school.
- 11, Teachers \_\_\_\_\_ to wear uniforms
- 12, Rosa had an accident . She \_\_\_\_\_ go to the hospital.
- 13, You can bring candies if you want: You \_\_\_\_\_ to bring them.
- 14, We \_\_\_\_\_ respect our teachers and classmates.
- 15, In our school we \_\_\_\_\_ to help with the cleaning.
- 16 My mother \_\_\_\_\_ to do the dishes. My father does the dishes everyday.
- 17. Drivers \_\_\_\_\_ respect traffic lights.
- 18. You \_\_\_\_\_ cry. This was not a good boyfriend.
- 19. You \_\_\_\_\_ ride your motorbike without a helmet.
- 20. Parents \_\_\_\_\_ take care of babies.
-

## ***May/Might***

- May and Might
  - Not certain, request
  - It might not rain tomorrow.
  - I may not go to Moroni tomorrow.
  - WITH WEATHER?
- Negative
  - Might not
  - May not
  - It might not rain tomorrow.
  - I may not go to Moroni tomorrow.
- Questions
  - Auxiliary Verb + Subject + Verb
  - May I \_\_\_\_\_
  - May I go out?
  - May I borrow your pencil?

➤ Modal Hotel—PRACTICE HOTEL VOCAB

## *Should/Ought To*

- Should=Ought to
  - Recommendation
- Shouldn't

### ➤ Reading—Advice Letter

DEAR ABBY, I am a high school student about to graduate. I will take the baccalaureate in June. It is a very difficult test. What should I do to prepare? -Lela

DEAR LELA, You must not forget the importance of studying. You should study for two hours everyday until you take the test. You may want to study in the library to minimize distractions. You can ask your teachers for help, too. But, you must not cheat. Remember, if you study hard, you can pass the test. Good luck, Abby

DEAR ABBY: I am a professional basketball player. My team consists of ten women who work closely together. During the last year, one of my team members got engaged. This year, a new player has joined the team, and now we have a new member on our team. My teammate who just got engaged has not, and does not, plan to invite this new member to her wedding, although the rest of us are invited.

I feel it wasn't appropriate to include all but one of the teammates simply because she is new to the team. Am I correct in feeling that my colleague did not handle this appropriately?

--Lela

DEAR LELA: A wedding is not a celebration to which everyone must be invited. Your teammate does not have to invite someone she does not know. She may invite only those people whom she knows well. Your new teammate might feel bad if she is not invited, but I don't think she will, as she should understand that she is new to the team and does not know the woman getting married.

### ➤ Practice—Write a Response

DEAR ABBY, I have a problem. I like to play football, but I am not very good. I want to play on the school team, but the coach said no. The other boys told me that I am not good. They don't want me on the team because they don't want to lose games. However, I really want to be on a team. What should I do?

---Mouhammad

## Gerunds or Infinitives

Do you need \_\_\_\_\_ gerunds and infinitives? (revise)

I can't help \_\_\_\_\_ in late. It's Sunday! (sleep)

Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ for me? (wait)

I'll never forget \_\_\_\_\_ you for the first time. (meet)

You forgot \_\_\_\_\_ the door last night. (lock)

Will you be able \_\_\_\_\_ me a lift tomorrow? (give)

Don't you remember \_\_\_\_\_ me that yesterday? (tell)

You're not allowed \_\_\_\_\_ here. (park)

I learned \_\_\_\_\_ English when I was at three. (speak)

Did you remember \_\_\_\_\_ off the air conditioner? (turn)

My computers broken but I can't afford \_\_\_\_\_ a new one. (buy)

I like \_\_\_\_\_ my friends at the weekend. (meet)

Would you prefer to \_\_\_\_\_ in a town or city? (live)

I look forward to \_\_\_\_\_ you again. (see)

What are you planning on \_\_\_\_\_ tonight? (do)

Your bedroom is so dirty. It needs \_\_\_\_\_. (clean)

I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ time at home. (spend)

I'll carry on \_\_\_\_\_ until I get tired. (work)

If I tell you a secret, do you promise \_\_\_\_\_ anybody? (not tell)

It's getting late. We'd better be \_\_\_\_\_ home soon. (go)

Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ me move house? (help)

Do you fancy \_\_\_\_\_ a movie tonight? (watch)

You need to practice \_\_\_\_\_ English every day if you want \_\_\_\_\_. (speak / improve)

Answer key

to revise 2. sleeping 3. waiting 4. book 5. meeting 6. to lock 7. to give 8. telling 9. to park 10. to speak 11. to turn 12. to buy 13. meeting 14. live 15. seeing 16. doing 17. cleaning 18. spending 19. working 20. not to tell 21. going 22. to help 23. watching 24. speaking, to improve (2 points)

Set B; get, write, build, walk, take, learn, read, change, live, play, ignore, make, clean, tidy up, buy, turn down, watch, feel, wear, work, spend, go, predict, study

Set A: try, remember, advise, begin, like, can't stand, refuse, avoid, eager, encourage, opportunity, keep, enjoy, need, have trouble, keen on, unable, practice, stop, dislike, regret, suggest, can't help, understand.

Here is an enjoyable speaking activity to help students practice gerunds and infinitives. In this card game, students create sentences using words and phrases that need to be followed by a gerund or infinitive.

Before class, copy both sets of cards for each group of three students.

Procedure

Divide the class into groups of three and give each group a set of cards A and B.

Tell the students that the words and phrases on the cards in set A are followed by either a gerund or infinitive (with or without to).

Explain that students need to combine one card from set A and one card from set B to make a logical sentence. The sentence can be in any tense and can be positive or negative, but it must contain a gerund or infinitive.

Tell the groups to shuffle the set A cards and deal out three cards to each player. The left over cards should be placed face down in a pile on the table and the top card should be turned over and placed next to the pile. Students do the same with the set B cards. So on the table there should be two piles of cards and two cards turned over.

Players should always have six cards (three from each set) in their hand.

The players take it in turns to make sentences by combining a set A card and a set B card from the cards in their hand.

Each time they make a sentence, the students must place the cards on the table in front of them. After making a sentence they replace the two cards by taking one from each of the face-down piles.

When a student creates a sentence, the other players may accept or challenge the sentence.

If a player cannot make a sentence, they use their turn to change one of their cards, taking either the face-up card or the next face-down card from the corresponding pile. The card they put down goes on the face-up pile.

The student with the most pairs is the winner.

As students play, monitor their use of the gerund and infinitives. If necessary, ask students to repeat the pairs in front of them, returning the cards to the pile if they are not correct.

## Directions

\*\*\*Need maps

### ➤ Agenda

- Vocabulary
- Commands
- Practice

### ➤ Vocabulary

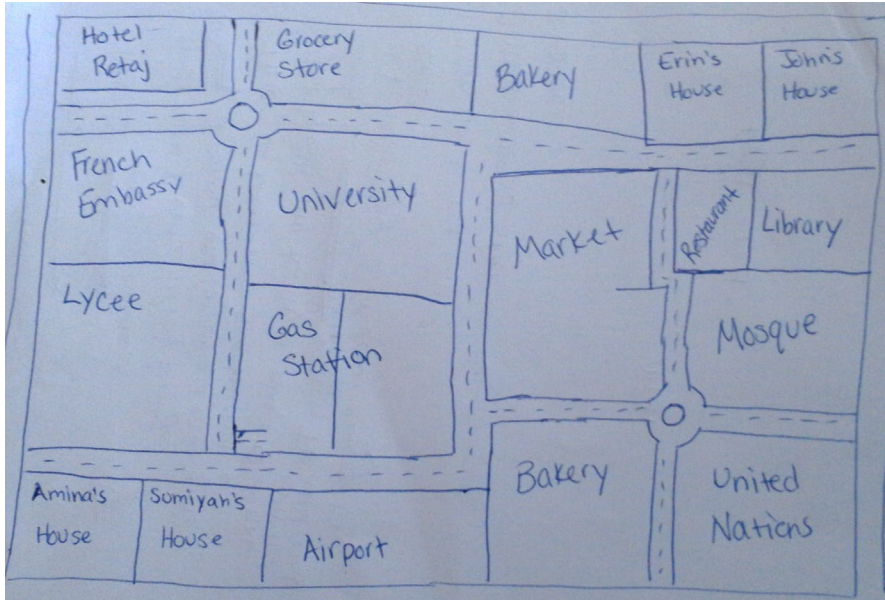
- Verbs
  - To turn--tourner
  - To go—aller
  - To stop--arrêter
  - To back up—sauvegarder???
  - To cross— traverse
  -
- Adverbs
  - Straight—tout droit
  - Left—gauche
  - Right— droite
  - Close (to)—tout près (de)
  - Far (from)—loin (de)
- Nouns
  - Map—carte
  - Street—rue
  - Road—rue
  - Roundabout—rond-point
  - Neighbourhood--voisinage
  - Corner—coin
  - North—nord
  - East—est
  - South—sud
  - West—ouest
  - Direction-direction
- Prepositions
  - Between—entre
  - In the middle (of)—au milieu (de)
  - Behind— derrière
  - In front of—devant
  - Next to—à côté de
  - Beside— à côté de
  - Near—près
  - Towards— vers
  - Across (from)— à travers (de)
- Process
  - Process--processus
  - First— premier
  - Second— deuxième
  - Third— troisième
  - Fourth— quart
  - Fifth— cinquième
  - Next—prochaine
  - Then— alors

- Finally— finalement
- After— après
- Before—avant
- Just after—juste après
- Just before—juste avant

➤ Command Form

- Usually used with a process
- Infinitive without TO.
- EX: Turn left. Go straight.

➤ Map Practice



➤ Practice in Groups of 4

- \*\*\*Don't write on map
- Ask each question multiple times to express location in multiple ways (across from, beside, etc.)
- Where is the university?
- Where is the lycee?
- Where is the bakery?
- Where is the mosque?
- Where is Amina's house?
- Where is the United Nations?
- Where is the library?
- Where is Volo Volo?

➤ Ask directions.

- I'm at x. I want to get to y. Snake around room so each student gives a direction.



## Process-Directions

- Agenda
  - Review
  - Reading Comprehension
  - Describe a Process
  - Listening Comprehension
- Review. Ask students:
  - Where do you live?
  - What do you live near?
  - What do you live across from?
  - What is behind your house?
- Reading Comprehension
  - \*\*Students don't write
  - Today, my friend and I went to a new school. On the way, I got lost. When my friend arrived at the lycee, she called me. I told her I was lost and that I was at the library. She said I was far from the lycee. I asked her, "Where is the lycee?" She said it was near the university, beside the French Embassy, and across from the gas station.  
Then, I asked her for directions. She said, "Go straight towards the bank and then turn left. At the roundabout near the airport, turn right. When you are across from the gas station, turn left. Turn right next to Sumiyah's house. When you are between Amina's house and Sumiyah's house, turn right. The lycee will be on your left. See you soon."
  - Questions
    - Where was I when my friend called me?
    - Where was my friend when she called me?
    - What are 3 buildings near the lycee?
    - What is the lycee far from?
    - At the roundabout, what direction do I turn?
    - What side of the street is the lycee on when I arrive?
  - Vocab
    - To get lost-se perdre
    - To arrive-arriver
    - To tell-dire
    - To ask-demander
    - To call--appeler
    - Building—edifice
- Process
  - I am at my house. I want to go to Sumiyah's house.
  - First, go west towards the university. Then, turn left on the street between Volo Volo and the university. Next, go straight. Finally, at the corner of the gas station, turn right.
- Listening
  - I give random directions (more and more complex). Students have to tell me where I end up by following along on map.
- Fillers
  - Ask directions.
    - I'm at x. I want to get to y. Snake around room so each student gives a direction.
  - Ask for real world directions
    - To Volo Volo from here?
    - To Dubai market?
    - To Badjananani?
    - The port
    - Hotel Retaj
    - American Corner
    - Comore Telecom in Zillamadju

- What is a place near/beside/between...
  - Hotel Les Arcade
  - Itsandra Beach
  - Friday Mosque
  - Ministry of Education
  - Football Stadium
  - French Alliance

**Directions:** I will return to America tomorrow. I will leave from Zalhata's house. I need to go to Comore Telecom and then the airport. Where is Comore Telecom? Where is the airport? How do I get to the airport? Write five or more sentences to answer the questions. Use at least 3 different direction prepositions and 2 process adverbs.

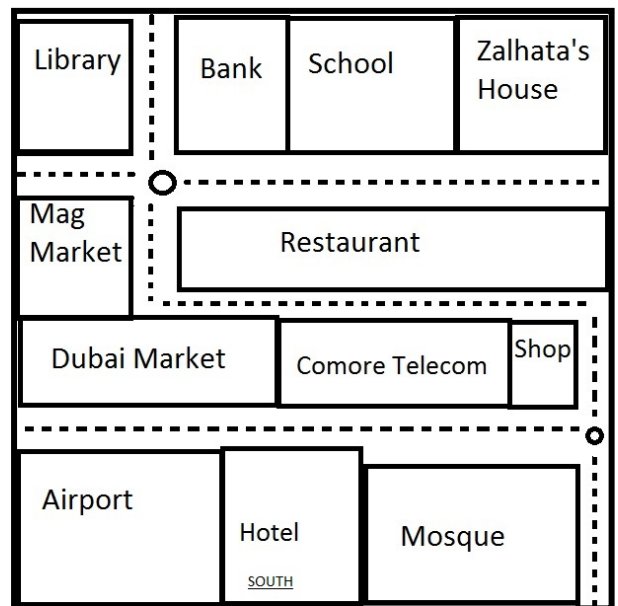
**Grade on**

- **Cardinal Direction—Initial**
- **5 sentences**
- **3 or more direction prepositions.**
- **Correct Directions**
- **2 process adverbs**
- **Makes sense?**

**Directions:** I am visiting Comoros. I am at the airport. I need to go to Dubai Market and then to my friend Zalhata's house. Where is Dubai Market? Where is Zalhata's house? How do I get to the Zalhata's house? Write five or more sentences to answer the questions. Use at least 3 different direction prepositions and 2 process adverbs.

**Grade on**

- **Cardinal Direction—Initial**
- **5 sentences**
- **3 or more direction prepositions.**
- **Correct Directions**
- **2 process adverbs**
- **Makes sense?**



## Weather

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Nouns

- Sun—soleil
- Moon—lune
- Star—étoile
- Sky—ciel
- Cloud—nuage
- Wind—vent
- Rain—pluie
- Thunder—tonnerre
- Lightning—foudre
- Fog—brouillard
- Snow—neige
- Temperature—température
- Storm—orage
- Tornado—tornade
- Hurricane—ouragan
- Rainbow—arc
- Flood—inondation

#### ○ Verbs

- To rain—pleuvoir
- To sprinkle—asperger
- To pour—verser
- To thunder
- To lightning
- To snow—neiger
- To storm
- To flood—inonder
- To shine—briller
- To blow--souffler

#### ○ Adjectives

- Sunny—ensoleillé
- Cloudy—nuageux
- Windy—vent
- Rainy-pluvieux
- Foggy—brumeux
- Snowy-neigeux
- Clear—clair
- Hot—chaud
- Cold—froid
- Cool—frais
- Humid—humide

#### ○ Seasons—saison

- Dry season—sécher
- Wet season—humide
- Summer—été
- Autumn=fall—automne
- Winter—hiver
- Spring—printemps

### ➤ Questions

- What is the temperature outside?
  - \_\_\_\_\_ degrees Celsius
- What's the weather like?
- How's the weather?
- What's it like outside?
- What's it doing outside?
- Review Present Continuous
  - To be + ing
  - For what it is like right now.
- Practice
  - What's the weather like today? Yesterday?
  - What weather is common (commun) in Comoros?
    - Does it flood?
    - Do you have hurricanes?
    - What do you do if it does?
  - What is your favorite type of weather? Why?
  - What's your least favorite type of weather? Why?
- Weather Scenes
  - With a partner, describe weather and what person is wearing
    - What's the weather like?
      - Say three things.
      - Use present progressive.
    - What season is it?
    - What are the people wearing?
    - What are they doing?
- Idioms
  - It is raining cats and dogs—it's raining very hard (dur)
  - Long-winded—very long period of talking
  - Head in the clouds—not paying attention
    - To daydream—réverie
  - It happens once in a blue moon—it almost never happens
- Song
  - Vocabulary
    - To climb—monter
    - Spider—araignée
    - Water spout—l'eau bec verseur
  - The eency weency spider climbed up the water spout.  
Down came the rain and washed the spider out.  
Out came the sun and dried up all the rain,  
and the eency weency spider climbed up the spout again
- Song
  - Rain, rain, go away. Come again another day.

## Prefixes and Suffixes

### Prefixes

Re-	Again	Return, reread, rewrite
Un- In- Im- dis- non-	Not	Unimportant, unlock, uncover inactive impossible dislike, disagree, distrust nonviolent
Over-	Too much, more than, above	Overweight, overhead
Under-	Too little, below	Underweight, underground
mis-	Bad, wrong	Misspell,
Uni-	One	Unicycle, uniform, unicorn
Bi-	Two	Bicycle
Tri-	Three	Tricycle, triangle
Multi-	Many	Multicolor, multiracial
Inter-	Between	Interview, interstate
Trans-	Across	Transportation

### Suffixes

-er	Person who does, comparative	Writer, teacher, taller, bigger	Adjective
-est	Superlative	Tallest, biggest	Adjective
-ful	Full of	Beautiful, painful, colorful	Adjective
-less	Without	Painless, careless, colorless	Adjective

### Adjective Form

-y		Cloudy
-al/-ial	Related to	Colonial
-en	Made of, to make	Wooden, tighten
-able	Can be done	Enjoyable, likable
-ive/-ative/-tive	Tending to action	Talkative, active
-ic		Energetic
-ous/-eous/-ious	Full of	Adventurous, nervous, mysterious, courteous

### Noun Form

-ation/-ion/-ition/-tion	Act of	Invitation
-ness	Condition	Darkness, fairness
-ment	Act/process	Enjoyment, replacement
-ence/-ance	Act or condition of	Importance, exccellence

## Forming Adjectives and Adverbs

Many adjectives that end in -al and many adverbs that end in -ally can be formed from nouns

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
Nation	National	Nationally
Tradition		
Occasion		
Nature	Natural	
Universe		
Race	Racial	
Commerce		
Geography	Geographical	
History		
Colony		
industry		

Form adjectives and adverbs from words to fill in the blank in conversation

## Forming Nouns from Verbs

Nouns can be formed verbs in many ways (--tion, --ment, --er)

Verb	Noun
Conserve	Conservation
Convert	Conversion
	Cultivation
Destroy	Destruction
Organise	
	Introduction
Move	
	Amazement
	Achievement
	Encouragement
Protect	
Argue	
Discuss	
Compensate	
Pay	
Compete	





## Cause and Effect

Cause	Connecting Phrase	Result/Effect
	Brought about	A big improvement...
	Contributes to	
	Are responsible for	
	Results in	
	Led to	
	May mean	
	Can lead to	

## Goldilocks and the Three Bears

### ➤ Vocabulary:

#### ○ Nouns:

- Title
- Author
- Fairy tale—conte d fées
- Bear—ours
- Woods—forêt
- Door—porte
- Stairs—escalier

#### ○ Verbs

- To skip (skipped)—sauter
- To come (came)—venir
- To try—essayer
- To creep (crept)—ramper
- To wonder—demander
- To make (made)—faire
- To break (broke)—

#### ○ Adjective

- Soft—muelleux
- Hard—dur

### ➤ Read Story

- Read once, just listen. Students needs copy in front of them.
- Read to understand. Guess word meaning.
  - Curieux—curious
  - Porridge—
  - To growl—grogner
  - To roar—beugler
- Comprehension Check
  - What happened in the story?
    - To summarize
    - Summary
    - Plot
  - Where does the story take place?
    - Setting
  - Why did the 3 bears leave their house?
  - Where did Goldilocks see the porridge?
  - Did Goldilocks eat Mommy Bear's Porridge? Why not?
  - After eating the porridge, what does Goldilocks do?
  - What happened to Baby Bear's chair?

- Did Goldilocks sleep in Daddy Bear's bed? Why not?
- What did Baby Bear do when he saw his porridge was gone?
- Who did the 3 bears find in their bedroom?
- What did Goldilocks do when she woke up?

○ Cause and Effect

- Why did Goldilocks eat the porridge?

Cause	Effect
Hungry	Ate porridge
	Sit in Chair
	Sleep in Bed

- Why did she sit in the chair?
- Why did she sleep in the bed?

➤ Filler

- Does Comoros have any fairy tales?
- Do you know any fairy tales?

## Fears and Bravery

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Nouns

- Weapon—arme
- Sword--épée
- Gun—arme, pistolet
- Bullet--balle
- Drug—médicament
- Outcast—
- Backlash—
  - Criticism—critique
  - Insults--insultes
- Somebody—quelqu'un
- Everyone--tout le monde
- Everybody—tout le monde
- Shadow-ombre
- Fear—peur
- Enemy—ennemi
- Cage-cage
- History—histoire
- Advocate=activist--recommander
- Rights—droit
- Equality—égalité
- Peace—paix
- Terrorist—terroriste
- Voice—voix
- Dignity—dignité
- Opportunity—occasion
- Aim=goal=ambition=dream—objectif
- Weakness—faiblesse
- Strength—force
- Courage—courage
- Revenge—vengeance
- Compassion—compassion
- Victim--victime

#### ○ Adjectives

- Amazing-incroyable
- Brave—brave, courageux
- Afraid—affrayé
- Empty—vide
- Full—plein, rempli
- Powerful—puissant
- Safe—pas dangereux
- Unsafe—dangereux
- Innocent--innocent

#### ○ Verbs

- To win—gagner
- To disappear—disparaître
- To enter—entrer
- To fight→fought--
- To ban--interdire
- To oppress—opprimer

- To hit—heurter
- To recover—retrouver
- To injure—blesser
- To shout—crier
- To fail—échouer
- To hate—detester
- To shoot—tirer sur
- To fire (gun)--tirer
- To frighten=to scare--effrayer
- Adverbs
  - Honestly—honnêtement
- Preposition
  - Against--contre
- Phrasals
  - To speak up—to say something
  - Under your skin—irritate you
    - Irritate—irriter
  - To stare down—to intimidate--intimider
  - To bow down—to give up—abandonner
  - To hold your tongue—to not speak when want to.
  - To raise your voice=to speak--
- What are you afraid of?
- What do you think is the most powerful weapon?
- Song—Brave by Sara Barellis

- You can be amazing  
You can turn a phrase into a weapon or a drug  
You can be the outcast  
Or be the backlash of somebody's lack of love  
Or you can start speaking up

Nothing's gonna hurt you the way that words do  
When they settle 'neath your skin  
Kept on the inside and no sunlight  
Sometimes a shadow wins  
But I wonder what would happen if you

Say what you wanna say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave  
With what you want to say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave

I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I wanna see you be brave

I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I wanna see you be brave

Everybody's been there,

Everybody's been stared down by the enemy  
Fallen for the fear  
And done some disappearing,  
Bow down to the mighty  
Don't run, just stop holding your tongue

Maybe there's a way out of the cage where you live  
Maybe one of these days you can let the light in  
Show me how big your brave is

Say what you wanna say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave  
With what you want to say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave

And since your history of silence  
Won't do you any good,  
Did you think it would?  
Let your words be anything but empty  
Why don't you tell them the truth?

Say what you wanna say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave  
With what you want to say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave

I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I wanna see you be brave

I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
See you be brave

I just wanna see you (yeah)  
I just wanna see you (oh ooh)  
I just wanna see you

I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you

➤ Reading--Malala Yousafzai

Malala was born on July 12, 1997 in Swat Vally in northwest Pakistan. Her family runs many schools in the area, but the local Taliban would ban girls from attending school. Yousafzai wrote about her life under the Taliban's oppression. She wrote about the importance of education, especially for girls.

On the afternoon of 9 October 2012, Yousafzai was riding the bus to school when a Taliban gunman entered and asked for her by name. He fired his gun three times. One bullet hit the left side of Yousafzai's forehead, traveled under her skin through the length of her face, and then went into her shoulder. The other bullets hit two of her friends. She was eventually taken to England to recover, as it was unsafe for her in Pakistan because the Taliban still wanted to kill her. She still lives in England, but she hopes to return to Pakistan some day. She remains an important advocate for women's education.

“Dear brothers and sisters, do remember one thing. Malala Day is not my day. Today is the day of every woman, every boy and every girl who have raised their voice for their rights. There are hundreds of human rights activists and social workers who are not only speaking for human rights, but who are struggling to achieve their goals of education, peace and equality. Thousands of people have been killed by the terrorists and millions have been injured. I am just one of them.

So here I stand... one girl among many.

I speak – not for myself, but for all girls and boys.

I raise up my voice – not so that I can shout, but so that those without a voice can be heard.

Those who have fought for their rights:

Their right to live in peace.

Their right to be treated with dignity.

Their right to equality of opportunity.

Their right to be educated.

Dear Friends, on the 9th of October 2012, the Taliban shot me on the left side of my forehead. They shot my friends too. They thought that the bullets would silence us. But they failed. And then, out of that silence came, thousands of voices. The terrorists thought that they would change our aims and stop our ambitions but nothing changed in my life except this: Weakness, fear and hopelessness died. Strength, power and courage was born. I am the same Malala. My ambitions are the same. My hopes are the same. My dreams are the same.

Dear sisters and brothers, I am not against anyone. Neither am I here to speak in terms of personal revenge against the Taliban or any other terrorist group. I am here to speak up for the right of education of every child. I want education for the sons and the daughters of all the extremists especially the Taliban.

I do not even hate the Talib who shot me. Even if there is a gun in my hand and he stands in front of me, I would not shoot him. This is the compassion that I have learnt from Muhammad-the prophet of mercy, Jesus Christ and Lord Buddha. This is the legacy of change that I have inherited from Martin Luther King, Nelson Mandela and Muhammad Ali Jinnah. This is the philosophy of non-violence that I have learnt from Gandhi Jee, Bacha Khan and Mother Teresa. And this is the forgiveness that I have learnt from my mother and father. This is what my soul is telling me, be peaceful and love everyone.

Dear sisters and brothers, we realise the importance of light when we see darkness. We realise the importance of our voice when we are silenced. In the same way, when we were in Swat, the north of Pakistan, we realised the importance of pens and books when we saw the guns.

The wise saying, “The pen is mightier than sword” was true. The extremists are afraid of books and pens. The power of education frightens them. They are afraid of women. The power of the voice of women frightens them. And that is why they killed 14 innocent medical students in the recent attack in Quetta. And that is why they killed many female teachers and polio workers in Khyber Pukhtoon Khwa and FATA. That is why they are blasting schools every day.

Because they were and they are afraid of change, afraid of the equality that we will bring into our society.

I remember that there was a boy in our school who was asked by a journalist, “Why are the Taliban against education?” He answered very simply. By pointing to his book he said, “A Talib doesn't know what is written inside this book.”

They think that God is a tiny, little conservative being who would send girls to the hell just because of going to school. The terrorists are misusing the name of Islam and Pashtun society for their own personal benefits. Pakistan is peace-loving democratic country. Pashtuns want education for their daughters and sons. And Islam is a religion of peace, humanity and brotherhood. Islam says that it is not only each child's right to get education, rather it is their duty and responsibility.

Honourable Secretary General, peace is necessary for education. In many parts of the world especially Pakistan and Afghanistan; terrorism, wars and conflicts stop children from going to their schools. We are really tired of these wars. Women and children are suffering in many parts of the world in many ways. In India, innocent and poor children are victims of child labour. Many schools have been destroyed in Nigeria. People in Afghanistan have been affected by the hurdles of extremism for decades. Young girls have to do domestic child labour and are forced to get married at an

early age. Poverty, ignorance, injustice, racism and the deprivation of basic rights are the main problems faced by both men and women.

Dear fellows, today I am focusing on women's rights and girls' education because they are suffering the most. There was a time when women social activists asked men to stand up for their rights. But, this time, we will do it by ourselves. I am not telling men to step away from speaking for women's rights rather I am focusing on women to be independent to fight for themselves.

Dear sisters and brothers, now it's time to speak up.

So today, we call upon the world leaders to change their strategic policies in favour of peace and prosperity.

We call upon the world leaders that all the peace deals must protect women and children's rights. A deal that goes against the dignity of women and their rights is unacceptable.

We call upon all governments to ensure free compulsory education for every child all over the world.

We call upon all governments to fight against terrorism and violence, to protect children from brutality and harm.

We call upon the developed nations to support the expansion of educational opportunities for girls in the developing world.

We call upon all communities to be tolerant – to reject prejudice based on cast, creed, sect, religion or gender. To ensure freedom and equality for women so that they can flourish. We cannot all succeed when half of us are held back.

We call upon our sisters around the world to be brave – to embrace the strength within themselves and realise their full potential.

Dear brothers and sisters, we want schools and education for every child's bright future. We will continue our journey to our destination of peace and education for everyone. No one can stop us. We will speak for our rights and we will bring change through our voice. We must believe in the power and the strength of our words. Our words can change the world.

Because we are all together, united for the cause of education. And if we want to achieve our goal, then let us empower ourselves with the weapon of knowledge and let us shield ourselves with unity and togetherness.

Dear brothers and sisters, we must not forget that millions of people are suffering from poverty, injustice and ignorance. We must not forget that millions of children are out of schools. We must not forget that our sisters and brothers are waiting for a bright peaceful future.

So let us wage a global struggle against illiteracy, poverty and terrorism and let us pick up our books and pens. They are our most powerful weapons.

*"One child, one teacher, one pen and one book can change the world."*

One child, one teacher, one pen and one book can change the world.

Education is the only solution. Education First.”

### **Conversation Questions for Women/Girls**

What do you think about Malala?

If you could speak to her today, what questions would you ask her or what would you say to her?

Do you think Malala is a leader? Why or why not?

Would you like to join Malala's organization? Explain.

How would you react if your mother, sister, daughter, or friend wanted to join Malala's organization?

If you wanted to join Malala's organization and your father told you “No, you can't join” what would you do?

What problems do children have to go to school? 8

What advice do you think Malala would give for these problems





## Exercise and Sports

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Nouns

- Basketball
- Football
- Tennis
- Volleyball
- Cycling
- Boxing
- Dancing
- Hockey-
- Referee
- Goalie
- Coach
- Player
- Crowd
- Team
- Backboard
- Basket
- Goal
- Tennis Racket
- Net
- Foul
- Skill
- Trophy
- Medal
- (football) field
- (basketball, volleyball, tennis) court
- (boxing) ring

#### ○ Verbs

- To cheer (for)
- To score
- To shoot (shot)
- To kick
- To bounce
- To volley
- To punch
- To dribble (basketball & football)
- To train
- To practice
- To win → won
- To lose → lost
- To box
- To fish
- To hike

#### ○ Adjectives

- Defensive
- Offensive

## Travel

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Nouns

- Airport-- aéroport
- Airplane=plane-- avion
- Airline—compagnie aérienne
- ~~Jet—avion à réaction~~
- ~~Helicopter—hélicoptère~~
- ~~Hangar—hangar~~
- ~~Wing—aile~~
- Seat--place
- Window--fenêtre
- Aisle--couloir
- Safety belt—ceinture de sécurité
- Cockpit—cockpit, la cabine de pilotage
- ~~Landing strip—piste d'atterrissage~~
- ~~Control tower—~~
- Fuel--carburant
- Flight—vol
- Gate number—numéro de la porte
- Luggage=baggage—bagages
- Ticket—billet
  - One-way ticket-un aller
  - Round trip ticket—un aller et retour
- Information desk—bureau de renseignements
- Passenger--passager
- Pilot—pilote
- Copilot--copilote
- Stewardess/steward=flight attendant—steward
- Tourist--touriste
- Hotel—hôtel
- room--chambre
- ~~Doorman—portier~~
- ~~Bellboy—bellhop—chasseur~~
- ~~Manager—concierge~~
- ~~Reception Desk—~~
- Reservation—réservation
- bill—facture
- ~~elevator—ascenseur~~
- line=queue--queue
- timetable=schedule—horaire
- Passport--passeport
- Visa--visa
- Nationality--nationalité
- Identification card—carte d'identité
- Travel Agency—agence de tourisme
- Itinerary--itinéraire
- ~~Customs—douane~~
- ~~Rate of exchange—cours~~
- ~~Refreshments—rafraîchissements~~
- ~~Security check—~~
- Destination—destination

- Verbs
  - To fly→flew→flown--voler
  - To fill up—faire le plein
  - To immigrate--immigrer
  - To land—atterrir
  - To take off—décoller
  - To fly over—survoler
  - To tip—donner un pourboire
  - To stand in line→stood—faire la queue
  - To weigh—faire peser
  - To check (luggage)—faire enregistrer
  - To make a reservation—
  - To get on—monter dans
  - To get off—descendre
  - To sign—signer
  - To pay—payer
  - To tour—faire du tourisme
  - To make plans—faire des projets
  - To park—garer
  - To board—monter à bord
  - To depart—partir
  - To cancel—annuler
  - To delay—retarder
  - To hurry--dépêcher
- Adjectives
  - Mechanical—mécanique
  - Dangerous--dangereux
  - Safe—pas dangereux
- Adverbs
  - Fast=quick=rapid—rapide
  - Slow--lent

➤ Conversation:

- Passenger: Excuse me. I don't know the gate number for my flight.
- Flight Attendant: Ok. What is your destination?
- Passenger: New York.
- Flight Attendant: Can I see your ticket, please?
- Passenger: Yes.
- Flight Attendant: Thank you. Flight 123 departs from gate 6.
- Passenger: The flight leaves at 3:45, right?
- FA: I'm sorry but that flight has been delayed because of mechanical problems. It now takes off at 11:00.
- Passenger: Oh. Is there another flight I can take? I have reservations in New York at 9:00. I don't want to cancel them.
- FA: There is a flight on a different airline leaving at 4:00 that I can get you on. It will land in New York at 7:15.
- Passenger: That would be great.
- FA: Do you have any checked baggage?
- Passenger; No.
- FA: OK. Here is your new ticket. The gate number is 9. The flight is boarding now. The men are just filling up the plane with fuel and then the plane will take off. So, hurry and have a safe flight.
- Passenger: Thank you.



## Restaurant

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Nouns

- Waiter—serveur
- Menu—menu
- Dishes--vaisselle

#### ○ Verbs

- To fry—faire frire
- To boil—faire bouillir
- To wash
- To dry—essuyer

## Verb Chart

Tense	Signal Word	Use	Form	Examples
Simple Present	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Every day</li> <li>• Sometimes</li> <li>• Always</li> <li>• Often</li> <li>• Usually</li> <li>• Seldom</li> <li>• Rarely</li> <li>• Never</li> <li>• First...then</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Something happens repeatedly</li> <li>• How often something happens</li> <li>• One action follows another</li> <li>• For a fact that is always (or almost always) true</li> <li>• Future Meaning: timetables/schedules and programs</li> </ul>	Verb  For He/She/It: Verb = s	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I work.</li> <li>• He works.</li> <li>• I don't work.</li> <li>• He doesn't work.</li> <li>• Do I work?</li> <li>• Does he work?</li> </ul>
Simple Past	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Last _____</li> <li>• _____ ago</li> <li>• In [past year]</li> <li>• Yesterday</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Action that started and ended in the past</li> </ul>	Verb + ed  *Many irregulars	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I worked.</li> <li>• He worked.</li> <li>• I didn't work.</li> <li>• He didn't work.</li> <li>• Did I work?</li> <li>• Did he work?</li> </ul>
Simple Future	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tomorrow</li> <li>• In _____</li> <li>• Next _____</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Predictions in the future (what you think will happen)</li> <li>• Action you spontaneously decide to do while speaking</li> <li>• Main clause in type 1 of the conditional sentences</li> </ul>	Will + verb  Formal: I/we shall + verb	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I will work.</li> <li>• He'll work.</li> <li>• I won't work.</li> <li>• He will not work.</li> <li>• Will I work?</li> <li>• Will he work?</li> </ul>
Present Progressive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Now</li> <li>• At the moment</li> <li>• Currently</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Something is happening now</li> <li>• Action that isn't finished but might not be happening right now.</li> <li>• Future Meaning: When you have decided and arranged future actions (definite plans)</li> </ul>	To be (present tense) + verb + ing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I am working.</li> <li>• He is working.</li> <li>• I'm not working.</li> <li>• He isn't working.</li> <li>• Am I working?</li> <li>• Is he working?</li> </ul>
Past Progressive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• While</li> <li>• When</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An action was happening [past progressive] when another action interrupted [simple past]</li> <li>• Someone was doing an action in the past and the speaker doesn't know whether action was finished or not</li> </ul>	To be (past tense) + verb + ing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I was working.</li> <li>• He was working.</li> <li>• I was not working.</li> <li>• He wasn't working.</li> <li>• Was I working?</li> <li>• Was he working?</li> </ul>
Future Progressive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Something happens because it normally happens</li> <li>• An action will be in progress at a certain time in the future</li> </ul>	Will + be + verb + ing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I will be working.</li> <li>• He will be working.</li> <li>• I won't be working.</li> <li>• He will not be working.</li> <li>• Will I be working?</li> </ul>

				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Will he be working?</li> </ul>
Simple Present Perfect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Just</li> <li>• Yet</li> <li>• Never</li> <li>• Ever</li> <li>• Already</li> <li>• So far</li> <li>• Up to now</li> <li>• Since</li> <li>• For</li> <li>• Recently</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Action started in the past and continues up to the present with emphasis on length of time</li> <li>• Action has happened in the past and is connected to the present</li> <li>• Actions that happened in the past when time is not known</li> <li>• Emphasis on Result/Action—what has happened so far (What/How much/How often)</li> </ul>	To have (present tense) + past participle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I have worked.</li> <li>• He has worked.</li> <li>• I haven't worked.</li> <li>• He hasn't worked.</li> <li>• Have I worked?</li> <li>• Has he worked?</li> </ul>
Simple Past Perfect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Already</li> <li>• Just</li> <li>• Never</li> <li>• Before</li> <li>• After</li> <li>• By the time</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Action that happened [simple past perfect] before another action [simple past] in the past</li> </ul>	To have (past tense) + past participle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I had worked.</li> <li>• He had worked.</li> <li>• I had not worked.</li> <li>• He hadn't worked.</li> <li>• Had I worked?</li> <li>• Had he worked?</li> </ul>
Simple Future Perfect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• By the time</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An action will have happened before something in the future</li> </ul>	Will + have + past participle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I will have worked.</li> <li>• He'll have worked.</li> <li>• I will not have worked.</li> <li>• He won't have worked.</li> <li>• Will I have worked?</li> <li>• Will he have worked?</li> </ul>
Present Perfect Progressive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All day</li> <li>• The whole day</li> <li>• How long</li> <li>• Since</li> <li>• For</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Action that started in the past and has continued until now</li> <li>• How long an action has been happening</li> <li>• Emphasis on Duration</li> </ul>	To have (present tense) + been + verb + ing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I have been working for two days.</li> <li>• He has been working since 2012.</li> <li>• I haven't been working long.</li> <li>• He hasn't been working for 2 years.</li> <li>• Have I been working?</li> <li>• Has he been working?</li> </ul>
Past Perfect Progressive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How long</li> <li>• Since</li> <li>• For</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Action that was happening over time in the past [past perfect progressive] before another action happened [simple past] in the past</li> </ul>	To have (past tense) + been + verb + ing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I had been working.</li> <li>• He had been working.</li> <li>• I hadn't been working.</li> <li>• He had not been working.</li> <li>• Had I been working?</li> <li>• Had he been working?</li> </ul>
Future Perfect Progressive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An action will happen over time before something in the future.</li> </ul>	Will + have + been + verb + ing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I will have been working.</li> <li>• He will have been working.</li> <li>• I won't have been working.</li> <li>• He will not have been working.</li> <li>• Will I have been working?</li> <li>• Will he have been working?</li> </ul>







## Readings

### *New Student*

Glencoe Literature Blue Book p.AL19

#### Vocabulary

- To notice—remarquer
- To glance
- To recognize—reconnaître
- Bench--banc

Alexa met Mario on Monday. She got to school early that day and noticed him reading on a bench. He was wearing a bright red baseball cap, smiling and laughing all by himself.

“Hey,” Mario said, when he saw Alexa. “Do you know what time it is?”

“It’s 7:15,” Alexa answered, glancing down at her watch. She didn’t recognize Mario, so she asked, “Are you a student here?”

“Today is my first day,” Mario answered. “What about you?”

“I’m in the sixth grade. Ms. Garcia is my teacher,” Alexa answered.

“Me too!” Mario said, beaming. “I guess we’ll be in the same class.”

#### Questions:

1. Why is Mario smiling and laughing as he sits on the bench?
  - a. Alexa is cracking jokes.
  - b. He is enjoying his book.
  - c. He is excited to start school.
  - d. Ms. Garcia is a funny teacher.
2. Alexa doesn’t recognize Mario because
  - a. He is wearing a red baseball cap
  - b. He is sitting in a large group
  - c. They are in different grades
  - d. He is a new student at her school
3. The story takes place
  - a. At the beach
  - b. In the cafeteria
  - c. Outside the school
  - d. At a baseball game
4. Mario is beaming at the end of the story because
  - a. He is embarrassed about his red cap
  - b. He is nervous about starting at a new school
  - c. He is excited to have made a new friend
  - d. He doesn’t know what time school starts
5. What happens after Alexa tells Mario the time?
  - a. Alexa asks if he is a student.
  - b. Alexa walks into the school.
  - c. Mario smiles and laughs.
  - d. Alexa checks her watch.

## Climate

Glencoe Literature Blue book p.42

### Vocabulary

- Verbs
  - To figure out—to find
  - To affect—*affecter*
  - To impact—*affecter*
  - To drop—*tomber*
  - To absorb—*absorber*
- Noun
  - Precipitation—*précipitations*
  - Air Pressure—*pression atmosphérique*
  - Humidity—*humidité*
  - Region—*région*
  - Equator—*l'équateur, ligne équinoxiale*
  - Factor—*facteur*
  - Building—*bâtiment*
- Adjective
  - Average—*moyenne*
  - Local—*local*

### What is Climate?

You've probably noticed that the weather in other parts of the country is different from where you live. If you could see a map of the world's weather, you'd see even greater differences. Some parts of the world always seem rainy. Others are cold every winter. Climate is the pattern of weather that occurs in a particular area over many years. To determine the climate of a region, scientists figure out the average weather conditions over a period of 30 years or more. They look at the average temperature, precipitation, air pressure humidity, and the number of days of sunshine in each area.

### What Causes Different Climates?

Different parts of Earth receive different amounts of sunlight. The areas nearest the equator receive the most sunlight. They have a tropical climate with warm to hot temperatures year-round. Polar climates are found near the poles, where sunlight strikes Earth at a low angle. These places can get very cold. Some are always covered in ice. Subarctic, temperate, and mild climates lie between the tropics and the poles. Temperatures in these areas vary, but on average, they are not as hot as tropical climates and not as cold as polar climates. Is location the only factor that affects climate? No. Oceans, mountains, wind patterns, and even large cities can affect local climate.

### Local Effects on Climate

Imagine you're at the beach on a summer day. You take a moment to enjoy the cool, refreshing breeze that blows in from the ocean. Ocean winds and ocean currents affect the climate along the coasts. These areas are often cooler in the summer and warmer in the winter than areas located just a short distance inland.

Mountains also affect local climate. On the side of the mountain that faces the wind, the climate is generally cool and wet. That's because air cools as it moves up the mountain. As it cools, it drops its moisture as rain or snow. By the time the air reaches the top of the mountain, it is dry. The dry air continues over the mountain, heating up as it goes down the side of the mountain that faces away from the wind.

Cities can affect climate, too, especially in the summer. If you've ever walked barefoot on a hot street, you know that the street absorbs heat. So do parking lots and buildings. Some of the heat they absorb is sent back into the surrounding air. That makes the air in a city hotter.

### Questions

1. The text is talking about
  - a. The different types of climate

- b. Factors affecting climate
  - c. How location affects climate
2. What is the definition of climate?
  3. How do scientists figure out the climate of an area?
  4. What do they examine to figure out the climate of an area?
  5. Which regions receive the most sunlight?
  6. Where are polar climates located?
  7. What is the climate like in mild climates?
  8. What 5 things affect climate?
  9. How does a mountain affect local climate?

Write

1. What type of climate would you like to live in? What would the weather be like? Why would you want to live there?
2. Describe the climate where you live? Do you like it? Why or why not?

## *Transcontinental Railroad*

### Vocabulary

- Verbs
  - To ship—expédier
  - To receive—recevoir
  - To delay—retarder
  - To link—lier
  - To transport—transporter
- Nouns
  - Railroad/railway—chemin de fer
  - Settler—colon
  - Shipment—expédition
  - Goods-produit
  - Solution—solution
  - Coast—côte
  - Crews—workers—ouvriers
  - Hardship—épreuves
  - Landscape—paysage
  - Journey—voyage
  - Transportation—transport
- Adjective
  - Transcontinental
    - Break it down
    - Trans=across--à travers
    - Continent—continent
  - Dangerous—dangereux
  - Regular—régulier
  - Harsh—sévère
  - Varied—varié
    - To vary-varier

Before the transcontinental railroad was built, westward travel and shipping were time-consuming and dangerous. For the settlers who lived in the West, it was nearly impossible to receive regular shipments of goods. The solution had always been a coast-to-coast railroad, but building it took time.

In 1863, the Union Pacific Railroad began laying track westward, starting in Omaha, Nebraska. Far to the west in Sacramento, California, workers for the Central Pacific Railroad began laying track eastward. The work was difficult, and the crews met with many delays and hardships as they cut their way through the harsh and varied landscape of the West.

The two sets of tracks finally met at Promontory Point, Utah, on May 10, 1869. The new railroad linked the United States from coast to coast. A journey that had once taken four to six months could now be made in six days.

### Questions

1. Where did the two sets of tracks meet?
  - a. Omaha, Nebraska
  - b. Washington, D.C.
  - c. Sacramento, California
  - d. Promontory Point, Utah
2. Workers laid track from which two directions?
  - a. South and east
  - b. East and west
  - c. North and west

- d. North and south
3. Why was rail travel to the West so important?
  - a. Nobody lived west of Omaha, Nebraska
  - b. It was the only way workers could see the country.
  - c. It was the only way explorers could visit the Pacific Ocean
  - d. It greatly reduced the travel time and danger of a transcontinental trip.
4. What is the main idea of the first paragraph?
  - a. Without railroads, settlement in the West was difficult.
  - b. Two railroad companies worked to complete the railroad.
  - c. The transcontinental railroad linked the North to the South.
  - d. Western settlers could get their supplies only by boat or over land.
5. A good title for this passage about the railroad would be—
  - a. “Railroad Completed Despite Serious Hardships”
  - b. “Workers See the Country While Building Railroad”
  - c. “Transcontinental Railroad Connects Country Coast to Coast”
  - d. “Visit Promontory Point, Home of the Union Pacific Railroad”
6. Find synonyms for:
  - a. Almost in the first paragraph
    - i. Almost--presque
  - b. Products in the first paragraph
  - c. United in the third paragraph
    - i. To unite—unir
7. True or False:
  - a. Before the transcontinental railroad, shipping goods to the West was easy.
  - b. Building the transcontinental railroad was easy.
  - c. It took 6 years to build the transcontinental railroad.
  - d. The transcontinental railroad greatly reduced the time it took to travel West.
8. Writing
  - a. Before the transcontinental railroad, getting goods to the West was difficult. Is getting goods to Comoros and its villages difficult? Why or why not?

## *George Washington Carver*

Glencoe Literature Blue Book p AL18

### Vocabulary

- Verbs
  - To farm--cultiver
  - To plant--planter
  - To restore--restaurer
  - To encourage--encourager
  - To offer--offrir
  - To discover--découvrir
  - To invent--inventer
  - To provide--fournir
  - To believe--croire
- Noun
  - Agriculture--agriculture
  - Janitor—concierge
  - Contribution—contribution
  - Economy--économie
  - Institute--institut
  - Quality--qualité
  - Soil—sol
  - Dirt—crasse
  - Crop—moisson, récolte
  - Peanut--cacahuète
  - Nitrogen--azote
  - Product--produit
  - Flour--farine
  - Ink--encre
  - Cosmetic--cosmétique
  - Vinegar--vinaigre
  - Molasses--mélasse
  - Rubber--caoutchouc
  - Patent--brevet
  - Property--propriété
  - Method—méthode
  - Apprentice—apprenti
  - Asset--atout
- Adjective
  - Influential—influent

In the 1800s, farming became a science studied in university agriculture classes. One of the most influential early agricultural scientists was George Washington Carver. Carver worked as a janitor while he studied farming and agriculture at Iowa State Agricultural College. His contributions to farming and to the Southern economy were so great that he was offered an important teaching position at Tuskegee Normal and Industrial Institute after he graduated from college.

He helped Southern farmers restore the quality of their soil by encouraging them to plant peanuts. Peanuts provided nitrogen for the soil, and protein for Southerners' diets. Carver then developed and taught people about more than 300 products that could be made from the peanut plant, including cheese, coffee, soap, flour, ink, and cosmetics. He also created more than 100 products from the sweet potato, including vinegar, molasses, and rubber.

Carver invented many things during his lifetime, but he did not patent the majority of them. He believed that his discoveries and inventions should be free to everyone. When Carver died, he left all of his property and money to

the George Washington Carver Foundation so that farm methods and the well-being of farmers would continue to be studied and improved.

### Questions

1. According to the passage, what was Carver's job before he finished college?
  - a. Carver was an apprentice.
  - b. Carver was an educator.
  - c. Carver was a farmer.
  - d. Carver was a janitor.
2. After college, Carver taught at—
  - a. Harvard University
  - b. Iowa State Agricultural College
  - c. Tuskegee Normal and Industrial Institute
  - d. The George Washington Carver Foundation
3. You can conclude from the passage that nitrogen
  - a. Ruins peanut crops
  - b. Is bad for farm soil
  - c. Helps create healthy soil
  - d. Does not affect soil quality
4. One product Carver developed from the peanut plant is
  - a. Coffee
  - b. Vinegar
  - c. Rubber
  - d. Molasses
5. Carver did not patent most of his inventions because
  - a. He didn't have very many inventions
  - b. He didn't believe that the inventions were very useful
  - c. He believed that knowledge should be free to everyone
  - d. Most people were not interested in peanuts and sweet potatoes
6. Find the synonym for:
  - a. To finish school (1<sup>st</sup> paragraph)
  - b. Techniques (3<sup>rd</sup> paragraph)
7. What do you learn about Carver?
8. How did Carver help Southern farmers?
9. Why did Carver leave his personal and financial assets to the George Washington Carver Foundation?
10. Why did people at Tuskegee Normal and Industrial Institute want Carver to teach there?
11. Writing: How can farming help people in our society?

## ***What Kids Say About Bullying***

Blue Glencoe Literature Book p.110

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Verbs

- To bully—brimer
- To wonder—se poser des questions, se demander
- To happen—se passer
- To occur—avoir lieu
- To guess—deviner
- To explain—expliquer
- To subject—à soumettre
- To defend—défendre
- To prevent—empêcher
- To discipline—discipliner
- To solve—résoudre

#### ○ Adverbs

- Exactly—exactement

#### ○ Adjectives

- Fair—juste
- Hurtful
  - Hurt—fait mal

#### ○ Nouns

- Topic—sujet
- Psychologist—psychologue
- Treatment—traitement
- Excuse—excuse
- Reaction—réction
- Victim—victime
- Both—les deux

### **What Kids Say About Bullying**

If you have been bullied, you know how bad it feels. But you might not know how many other kids have felt exactly the same way. We were wondering what kids thought about this tough topic, so we asked 1,229 boys and girls to answer some questions about bullying. Nearly half of them said they had been bullied before. Some said it was happening every day. Others said it happened only once in a while. Here's how the group answered:

How often have you been bullied?

Every day (8%)

Every week, but not every day (7%)

Once in a while, but not every week (33%)

Never (52%)

The KidsPoll also asked how many of these kids were bullies themselves. Most of them (58%) said they never bullied others, but the rest said that they did.

22% said they bullied others once in a while.

5% said they bullied others every week.

15% said they bullied others every day.

As you have probably guessed, some kids said they were both bullies and the victims of bullies. Why is that? D'Arcy Lyness, a child psychologist, explains it this way:

“Some kids learn to bully because they have been subjected to mean, unfair treatment themselves—by others or by their families. That's sad, but it's no excuse,” Dr. Lyness says, “Everyone can choose to act in new and better ways. It's never too late.”

Most kids know what bullying is. It's when a person is repeatedly mean and hurtful toward someone else, often when that person has trouble defending himself or herself. The bully gets satisfaction (feels good) when he or she gets



a reaction out of the person being bullied. Like if a bully tells a kid, “You’re ugly!” and the kid cries and runs away, that’s satisfaction for the bully.

There are two keys to solving bullying, Dr. Lyness says. They are:

1. Kids should tell adults when bullying is happening to them, a friend, or a classmate.
2. Adults should take action to prevent bullying and discipline kids who are bullies.

### Question

1. According to the article, how many students are the victims of bullying?
  - a. Only a small percentage of students
  - b. More students than school officials had predicted
  - c. Less than half of all students
  - d. All students at least once
2. Which of these statements best explains how the victims of bullies can become bullies themselves?
  - a. Bullying is a behavior that you are born with.
  - b. Sometimes bullies repeat behavior that they have learned from their own experience.
  - c. When people are bullied, they usually learn to like it.
  - d. When people are bullied, their families often encourage them to fight back.
3. The author’s main purpose in writing the article is most likely to
  - a. Make sure that all bullying ends
  - b. Helps students understand the problem of bullying
  - c. Warn students about the dangers of being bullied
  - d. Teach students how to fight back against bullies
4. Why does someone bully others?
5. How can you stop bullying?
6. True or False? More kids bully others every day than were bullied.
7. True or False? People can be both bullies and victims of bullies
8. Write: Have you ever been bullied? Do you know anyone who has? Have you ever been a bully?
9. Write: What do you think about bullying?

## *Dressed for Success?*

Blue Glencoe Literature Book page 302

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Nouns

- Style—style
- Fashion—mode
- Dress code—code vestimentaire
- Uniform—uniforme
- Whatever—tout ce que
- School district= ministry of education
- State—état
- Pajama--pyjama

#### ○ Adjective

- Latest—dernier

#### ○ Verbs

- To back up=to support—soutenir
- To agree—être d'accord
- To disagree—ne pas être d'accord
- To worry—s'inquiéter
- To focus—concentrer
- To prove—prouver
- To order—commander

### ➤ Discuss

- Why do you wear a uniform to school?
- Do you like wearing a uniform to school? Why or why not?
- Do you do better in school because you wear a uniform?

At my school in Lemoyne, Pennsylvania, Principle Joseph Gargiulo follows the latest styles. But his interest has nothing to do with a love of fashion. He is just trying to back up Lemoyne Middle School's dress code.

Lemoyne does not let students wear flip-flops and pajama pants. "Pajamas are for sleeping in," says Gargiulo. "School is a student's job. You don't go to your job in pajamas."

Seventh-grader Leah Hawthorn disagrees. She says that wearing whatever she likes helps her do good work at school. "You worry less about how you look," she says. "So you are more focused on what you're doing in class."

Pennsylvania is one of 28 states that has given school districts the power to decide what students can wear to class. Many who are in charge of education believe that dress codes are good for students. They point to places such as the Long Beach Unified School District in California to prove it. In 1994, that school district became the first public school system to order elementary and middle school students to wear uniforms. Soon after, the school district found that fewer students had been absent and fewer had been put out of school than before.

### Questions

6. Why does Principle Joseph Gargiulo follow the latest styles?
7. Does Leah Hawthorn agree with Principle Gargiulo?
8. Why does Leah think wearing whatever she likes help her do better in school?
9. What happened after Long Beach Unified School District in California ordered students to wear uniforms?

## *Dress Code Letter*

Blue Glencoe Literature book page 316

### ➤ Vocabulary

- Ankle—cheville
- Recess—récréation
- Injury—Blessure
- Distraction—distraction
- Budget—budget
- Alternative—alternatif
- Robot—robot
- Outfit—tenue/ensemble
- Ability—capacité
- Decision—décision
- Purpose—but
- Evidence—preuve
- Fair—juste
- Unfair—injuste
- Itchy
  - Itch—démangeaison
- Comfortable—comfortable
- Uncomfortable
- Cheap—bon marché
- Expensive—cher
- Tight—serré
- Practical—pratique
- According to—selon
- To cause—causer
- To sprain—se fouler
- To support—support
- To follow—suivre
- To afford—pouvoir se permettre d'acheter
- To prevent—empêcher
- To distract—distraire
- To invest—investir
- To allow—permettre
- To express—exprimer
- To propose—proposer
- To struggle—se battre
- To make ends meet—
- To wear out—éprouver/user
- To clean—nettoyer
- Finally—finalement
- Immediately—immédiatement
- Actually--enfait

The Hope Middle School dress code caused student Jimmy Albert to spend his Friday night at the emergency room. Jimmy sprained his ankle playing basketball during afternoon recess. His sprain was caused because the dress shoes he was wearing did not provide enough support for basic recess activities. Jimmy's injury is one of several reasons why it is unfair for students to have to follow a dress code. I suggest the school dress code be changed to allow jeans and sneakers.

According to our principal, the dress code prevents distractions and helps students focus on learning. I disagree. Dressy clothes are distracting because the pants are itchy and dress shoes cause our feet to hurt. As a result, uncomfortable clothes actually distract students from schoolwork.

The second reason the dress code is unfair is because dress clothes are expensive. Many families at our school live on a tight budget and don't have money to invest on clothes that are only worn at school. This expense is unfair to parents who are struggling to make ends meet and students who can't afford to buy other clothes. Blue jeans are a practical alternative because they don't wear out quickly and they are easy to clean.

Finally, wearing a uniform makes students feel like robots. After a few weeks we get tired of seeing the same outfits and colors every day. Students should be allowed to express themselves through the clothes they choose to wear. In fact, making students conform to a dress code shows disrespect for the student's ability to make decisions.

A dress code does not help students focus on learning. Students like Jimmy shouldn't have to worry about hurting themselves during recess. I propose allowing jeans and sneakers to be part of the school dress code immediately, before another student gets hurt.

### Questions

7. Why is the student writing this letter? What does the writer want?
8. Why did Jimmy have to go to the emergency room?
9. What is the main idea of the second paragraph?
10. In the second paragraph, what evidence does the writer give that the dress code does not help students focus on learning?
11. What is the main idea of the third paragraph?
12. What is the main idea of the fourth paragraph?
13. Do you agree with the writer? Why or why not?

➤ Vocabulary

○ Verbs

- To realise—réaliser
- To fall out—tomber
- To braid—
- To appear—apparaître
- To mix--mélanger
- To reveal--révéler
- To remark—faire remarquer
- To sell--vendre
- To decide--décider
- To advertise—faire de la publicité
- To order--commander
- To mail--poster
- To agree
- To embark—embarquer
- To convince—convaincre
- To satisfy--satisfaire

○ Adjectives

- Tight--serré
- Loose--ample
- Available--disponible
- Empty--vide
- Full--plein
- Healthy—en bonne santé
- Special--spécial
- Trouble--mal
- Impossible--impossible
- Narrow--étroit
- Wide—large/vaste
- Insecure—manquer d'assurance
- Mean--méchant
- Determined--déterminé
- Meek--docile
- nationwide

○ Adverbs

- Likely--probable
- Publicly—en public
- Later—plus tard

○ Noun

- Product--produit
- Dream--rêve
- Scalp--cuir
- Formula--formule
- Business--entreprise
- Investment--investissement
- Customer--client
- Newspaper--journal
- State- état
- agreement--accord
- disagreement--désaccord
- preparation--préparation

- vision—vue/vision

Not long after they moved to St. Louis, Sarah McWilliams realized that her hair was falling out. She did not know why, but it is likely that the practice of braiding her hair too tightly was part of the cause. At the time, few hair-care products were available for black women. For years she tried every hair-care product available. But nothing worked.

Then one night she had a dream. As she told the story many years later, in her dream “a black man appeared to me and told me what to mix up for my hair. Some of the remedy was grown in Africa, but I sent for it, mixed it, put it on my scalp, and in a few weeks my hair was coming in faster than it had ever fallen out.” Sarah never publicly revealed the formula of her mixture.

Sarah’s friends remarked on what a full and healthy head of hair she had, and she gave some of her mixture to them. It worked on them, too, so she decided to sell it. She later said that she started her “Hair Grower” business with an investment of \$1.50.

She had not been in business long when she received word that a brother who lived in Denver, Colorado, had died, leaving a wife and daughters. Sarah decided to go to Denver to live with her sister-in-law and nieces.

In Denver, Sarah began to sell her special hair-care product and did well. But she realized she needed to advertise to get more customers. Six months after arriving in Denver, she married C.J. Walker, a newspaperman who knew a lot about selling by mail order. With his help, she began to advertise her product, first in black newspapers across the state and later in black newspapers nationwide, and to make more money.

But soon her marriage was in trouble. As Sarah Walker later said of her husband, “I had a business disagreement with him, for when we began to make ten dollars a day, he thought that amount was enough and that I should be satisfied. But I was convinced that my hair preparations would fill a long-felt want, and when we found it impossible to agree, due to his narrowness of vision, I embarked in business for myself.”

### Questions

1. What is the passage mainly about?
  - a. The importance of dreams
  - b. How to make hair-care products
  - c. Why Sarah Walker’s marriage broke up
  - d. How Sarah Walker started her company
2. From Walker’s disagreement with her husband, you can conclude that she was
  - a. Insecure
  - b. Mean
  - c. Determined
  - d. Meek
3. What belongs in the empty box on the timeline of Madam C.J. Walker’s life?
  1. Sarah discovers that her hair is falling out.
  2. Sarah creates a hair-growing formula.
  - 3.
  4. Sarah has a business disagreement with her husband
    - a. Sarah tries many hair-care products
    - b. Sarah has an important dream.
    - c. Sarah sends away to Africa for some of the remedy.
    - d. Sarah moves to Denver and marries C.J. Walker
4. Identify three things that Madam C.J. Walker did that suggest she would be a successful businessperson.
5. What did Sarah realize she needed to do to get more customers?

## ***Drink up!***

A new study shows that many kids aren't drinking enough water

JUNE 15, 2015

By Zachary Humenik

Kids should drink between 10 and 14 cups every day, according to a new study

Summer is almost here, and the weather is heating up. Are you drinking enough water? Many kids aren't, according to a new study published in the American Journal of Public Health.

The study's lead author, Erica Kenney, a scientist at Harvard's T.H. Chan School of Public Health, originally planned to look into the amount of sugary drinks kids were consuming in schools. However, during her research she found that many kids were simply not drinking enough water.

Kenney and her team examined data from a group of 4,000 children, ages 6 to 19, between the years of 2009 and 2012. The data was taken from the National Health and Nutrition Survey, a study on the health of children in the United States conducted each year by the Center for Disease Control and Prevention.

While looking through the survey results, she noticed that more than half of the kids who participated were dehydrated. Of that group, boys were 76% more likely than girls to not have enough water in their system. Nearly one quarter of the kids in the survey reported drinking no plain water at all.

"These findings are significant because they highlight a potential health issue that has not been given a lot of attention in the past," Kenney said in a statement. "Even though for most of these kids this is not an immediate, dramatic health threat, this is an issue that could really be reducing quality of life and well-being for many children and youth."

It is important to drink a lot of water when you are being physically active.  
How much is enough?

The human body is made up of 60% water. It regulates body temperature, delivers oxygen all over the body, assists in digestion, and performs various other tasks that keep our bodies healthy.

Not drinking enough water can lead to health problems such as headaches, irritability, poor physical performance, and even more serious issues. Your body needs more water when you are in hot climates, when you are physically active, and if you have a fever.

The United States National Agriculture Library says on average, kids need between 10 to 14 cups of water every day. This water can come from a mix of drinks and foods that contain high amounts of water, such as celery, melons, or tomatoes. It is also recommended that fluids come from water instead of sugary drinks that are high in calories and can lead to weight problems.

"The good news is that this is a public health problem with a simple solution," said senior author on the study and professor health sociology at Harvard University, Steven Gortmaker. "If we can focus on helping children drink more water – a low cost, no calorie beverage – we can improve their hydration status, which may allow many children to feel better throughout the day and do better in school."

Tips for staying hydrated

The United States Center for Disease Control offers the following tips for people to stay hydrated:

- Carry a water bottle for easy access.
- Freeze some freezer-safe water bottles. Take one with you for ice-cold water all day long.

- Choose water instead of sugar-sweetened beverages. This tip can also help with weight management. Substituting water for one 20-ounce sugar-sweetened soda will save you about 240 calories.
- Choose water instead of other beverages when eating out. Generally, you will save money and reduce calories.
- Give your water a little pizzazz by adding a wedge of lime or lemon. This may improve the taste, and you just might drink more water than you usually do.



### *Little Red Riding Hood*

Once upon a time there was a dear little girl who was loved by everyone who looked at her, but most of all by her grandmother, and there was nothing that she would not have given to the child. Once she gave her a little red cape, which fit her so well that she would never wear anything else; so she was always called 'Little Red-Riding Hood.'

One day her mother said to her: 'Come, Little Red-Riding Hood, here is a piece of cake and a bottle of water; take them to your grandmother, she is ill and weak, and they will do her good. Set out before it gets hot, and when you are going, walk nicely and quietly and do not run off the path.'

'I will take great care,' said Little Red-Riding Hood to her mother.

The grandmother lived out in the woods, and just as Little Red-Riding Hood entered the woods, a wolf met her. Little Red Riding Hood did not know what a wicked creature he was, and was not at all afraid of him.

'Good day, Little Red-Riding Hood,' said he.

'Thank you kindly, wolf.'

'Where are you going so early, Little Red-Riding Hood?'

'To my grandmother's.'

'What have you got in your basket?'

'Cake and water for poor sick grandmother is to have something good, to make her stronger.'

'Where does your grandmother live, Little Red-Riding Hood?'

'In the woods; her house stands under the three large oak-trees, the nut-trees are just below; you surely must know it,' replied Little Red-Riding Hood.

The wolf thought to himself: 'She will be better to eat than the old woman. I must act craftily, so as to catch both.' So he walked for a short time with Little Red-Riding Hood, and then he said: 'See, Little Red-Riding Hood, how pretty the flowers are about here—why do you not look round? I believe, too, that you do not hear how sweetly the little birds are singing; you walk gravely along as if you were going to school, while everything else out here in the woods is merry.'

Little Red-Riding Hood raised her eyes, and when she saw the sun and the pretty flowers growing everywhere, she thought: 'Suppose I take grandmother a fresh flower; that would please her too. It is so early in the day that I shall still get there in good time'; and so she ran from the path into the woods to look for flowers for her grandmother. And when she had picked one, she fancied that she saw a prettier one farther on, and ran after it.

Meanwhile the wolf ran straight to the grandmother's house and knocked at the door.

'Who is there?'

'Little Red-Riding Hood,' replied the wolf. 'bringing cake and water; open the door.'

Come in,' called out the grandmother, 'I am too weak, and cannot get up.'

The wolf opened the door and without saying a word he went straight to the grandmother's bed and ate her. Then he put on her clothes, dressed himself in her hat, and laid himself in bed.

Little Red-Riding Hood, however, had been running and picking flowers, and when she had gathered so many that she could carry no more, she remembered her grandmother, and set out on the way to her.

She was surprised to find the cottage-door standing open, and when she went into the room, she had such a strange feeling that she said to herself: 'Oh dear! how uneasy I feel today, and at other times I like being with grandmother so much.' She called out: 'Good morning,' but received no answer; so she went to the bed. There lay her grandmother with her hat pulled far over her face, and looking very strange.

'Oh! grandmother,' she said, 'what big ears you have!'

'The better to hear you with, my child,' was the reply.

'But, grandmother, what big eyes you have!' she said.

'The better to see you with, my dear.'

'But, grandmother, what large hands you have!'

'The better to hug you with.'

'Oh! but, grandmother, what a terrible big mouth you have!'

'The better to eat you with!'

And scarcely had the wolf said this, than with one bound he was out of bed and swallowed up Little Red Riding Hood.

The wolf lay down again in the bed, fell asleep and began to snore very loud. The huntsman was just passing the house, and thought to himself: 'How the old woman is snoring! I must just see if she wants anything.' So he went into the room, and when he came to the bed, he saw that the wolf was lying in it. He said, 'I have hunted you for a long time!' Then just as he was going to shoot him, he thought that the wolf might have eaten the grandmother, and that she might still be saved, so he did not shoot, but took a pair of scissors, and began to cut open the stomach of the sleeping wolf. When he had made two cuts, he saw Little Red Riding Hood, and then he made two cuts more, and the little girl sprang out, crying: 'Ah, how frightened I have been! How dark it was inside the wolf'; and after that grandmother came out. Little Red Riding Hood quickly found large rocks with which they put into the wolf's stomach, and when he awoke, he wanted to run away, but the stones were so heavy that he collapsed at once, and fell dead.

Then all three were happy and ate the cake and drank the water which Little Red Riding Hood had brought.

## ***Beauty and the Beast***

Once upon a time ... as a merchant set off for market, he asked each of his three daughters what she would like as a present on his return. The first daughter wanted a brocade dress, the second a pearl necklace, but the third, whose name was Beauty, the youngest, prettiest and sweetest of them all, said to her father:

“All I’d like is a rose you’ve picked specially for me!”

When the merchant had finished his business, he set off for home. However, a sudden storm blew up, and his horse could hardly make headway in the howling gale. Cold and weary, the merchant had lost all hope of reaching an inn when he suddenly noticed a bright light shining in the middle of a wood. As he drew near, he saw that it was a castle, bathed in light.

“I hope I’ll find shelter there for the night,” he said to himself. When he reached the door, he saw it was open, but though he shouted, nobody came to greet him. Plucking up courage, he went inside, still calling out to attract attention. On a table in the main hall, a splendid dinner lay already served. The merchant lingered, still shouting for the owner of the castle. But no one came, and so the starving merchant sat down to a hearty meal.

Overcome by curiosity, he ventured upstairs, where the corridor led into magnificent rooms and halls. A fire crackled in the first room and a soft bed looked very inviting. It was now late, and the merchant could not resist. He lay down on the bed and fell fast asleep. When he woke next morning, an unknown hand had placed a mug of steaming coffee and some fruit by his bedside.

The merchant had breakfast and after tidying himself up, went downstairs to thank his generous host. But, as on the evening before, there was nobody in sight. Shaking his head in wonder at the strangeness of it all, he went towards the garden where he had left his horse, tethered to a tree. Suddenly, a large rose bush caught his eye.

Remembering his promise to Beauty, he bent down to pick a rose. Instantly, out of the rose garden, sprang a horrible beast, wearing splendid clothes. Two bloodshot eyes, gleaming angrily, glared at him and a deep, terrifying voice growled: “Ungrateful man! I gave you shelter, you ate at my table and slept in my own bed, but now all the thanks I get is the theft of my favourite flowers! I shall put you to death for this slight!” Trembling with fear, the merchant fell on his knees before the Beast.

“Forgive me! Forgive me! Don’t kill me! I’ll do anything you say! The rose wasn’t for me, it was for my daughter Beauty. I promised to bring her back a rose from my journey!” The Beast dropped the paw it had clamped on the unhappy merchant.

“I shall spare your life, but on one condition, that you bring me your daughter!” The terror-stricken merchant, faced with certain death if he did not obey, promised that he would do so. When he reached home in tears, his three daughters ran to greet him. After he had told them of his dreadful adventure, Beauty put his mind at rest immediately.

“Dear father, I’d do anything for you! Don’t worry, you’ll be able to keep your promise and save your life! Take me to the castle. I’ll stay there in your place!” The merchant hugged his daughter.

“I never did doubt your love for me. For the moment I can only thank you for saving my life.” So Beauty was led to the castle. The Beast, however, had quite an unexpected greeting for the girl. Instead of menacing doom as it had done with her father, it was surprisingly pleasant.

In the beginning, Beauty was frightened of the Beast, and shuddered at the sight of it. Then she found that, in spite of the monster’s awful head, her horror of it was gradually fading as time went by. She had one of the finest rooms in the Castle, and sat for hours, embroidering in front of the fire. And the Beast would sit, for hours on end, only a short distance away, silently gazing at her. Then it started to say a few kind words, till in the end, Beauty was amazed to discover that she was actually enjoying its conversation. The days passed, and Beauty and the Beast became good friends. Then one day, the Beast asked the girl to be his wife. .-~

Taken by surprise, Beauty did not know what to say. Marry such an ugly monster? She would rather die! But she did not want to hurt the feelings of one who, after all, had been kind to her. And she remembered too that she owed it her own life as well as her father’s.

“I really can’t say yes,” she began shakily. “I’d so much like to ...” The Beast interrupted her with an abrupt gesture.

“I quite understand! And I’m not offended by your refusal!” Life went on as usual, and nothing further was said. One day, the Beast presented Beauty with a magnificent magic mirror. When Beauty peeped into it, she could see her family, far away.

“You won’t feel so lonely now,” were the words that accompanied the gift. Beauty stared for hours at her distant family. Then she began to feel worried. One day, the Beast found her weeping beside the magic mirror.

“What’s wrong?” he asked, kindly as always.

“My father is gravely ill and close to dying! Oh, how I wish I could see him again, before it’s too late!” But the Beast only shook its head.

“No! You will never leave this castle!” And off it stalked in a rage. However, a little later, it returned and spoke solemnly to the girl.\_

“If you swear that you will return here in seven days time, I’ll let you go and visit your father!” Beauty threw herself at the Beast’s feet in delight.

“I swear! I swear I will! How kind you are! You’ve made a loving daughter so happy!” In reality, the merchant had fallen ill from a broken heart at knowing his daughter was being kept prisoner. When he embraced her again, he was soon on the road to recovery. Beauty stayed beside him for hours on end, describing her life at the Castle, and explaining that the Beast was really good and kind. The days flashed past, and at last the merchant was able to leave his bed. He was completely well again. Beauty was happy at last. However, she had failed to notice that seven days had gone by.

Then one night she woke from a terrible nightmare. She had dreamt that the Beast was dying and calling for her, twisting in agony.

“Come back! Come back to me!” it was pleading. The solemn promise she had made drove her to leave home immediately.

“Hurry! Hurry, good horse!” she said, whipping her steed onwards towards the castle, afraid that she might arrive too late. She rushed up the stairs, calling, but there was no reply. Her heart in her mouth, Beauty ran into the garden and there crouched the Beast, its eyes shut, as though dead. Beauty threw herself at it and hugged it tightly.

“Don’t die! Don’t die! I’ll marry you ...” At these words, a miracle took place. The Beast’s ugly snout turned magically into the face of a handsome young man.

“How I’ve been longing for this moment!” he said. “I was suffering in silence, and couldn’t tell my frightful secret. An evil witch turned me into a monster and only the love of a maiden willing to accept me as I was, could transform me back into my real self. My dearest! I’ll be so happy if you’ll marry me ...”

The wedding took place shortly after and, from that day on, the young Prince would have nothing but roses in his gardens. And that’s why, to this day, the castle is known as the Castle of the Rose.

## *Cinderella*

Once upon a time, there lived an unhappy young girl. Unhappy she was, for her mother was dead, her father had married another woman, a widow with two daughters, and her stepmother didn't like her one little bit. All the nice things, kind thoughts and loving touches were for her own daughters. And not just the kind thoughts and love, but also dresses, shoes, shawls, delicious food, comfy beds, as well as every home comfort. All this was laid on for her daughters. But, for the poor unhappy girl, there was nothing at all. No dresses, only her stepsisters' hand-me-downs. No lovely dishes, nothing but scraps. No nice rests and comfort. For she had to work hard all day, and only when evening came was she allowed to sit for a while by the fire, near the cinders. That is how she got her nickname, for everybody called her Cinderella. Cinderella used to spend long hours all alone talking to the cat. The cat said,

"Meow", which really meant, "Cheer up! You have something neither of your stepsisters have and that is beauty."

It was quite true. Cinderella, even dressed in rags with a dusty grey face from the cinders, was a lovely girl. While her stepsisters, no matter how splendid and elegant their clothes, were still clumsy, lumpy and ugly, and they always would be.

One day, beautiful new dresses arrived at the house. A ball was to be held at Court and the stepsisters were getting ready to go to it. Cinderella, didn't even dare ask, "What about me?" for she knew very well what the answer to what would be.

"You? My dear girl, you're staying at home to wash the dishes, scrub the floors and turn down the beds for your stepsisters. They will come home tired and very sleepy." Cinderella sighed at the cat.

"Oh dear, I'm so unhappy!" and the cat murmured "Meow".

Suddenly something amazing happened. In the kitchen, where Cinderella was sitting all by herself, there was a burst of light and a fairy appeared.

"Don't be alarmed, Cinderella," said the fairy. "The wind blew me your sighs. I know you would love to go to the ball. And so you shall!"

"How can I, dressed in rags?" Cinderella replied. "The servants will turn me away!" The fairy smiled. With a flick of her magic wand, Cinderella found herself wearing the most beautiful dress, the loveliest ever seen in the realm.

Cinderella with her fairy godmother, by Edmund Dulac

"Now that we have settled the matter of the dress," said the fairy, "we'll need to get you a coach. A real lady would never go to a ball on foot!"

"Quick! Get me a pumpkin!" she ordered.

"Oh of course," said Cinderella, rushing away. Then the fairy turned to the cat.

"You, bring me seven mice!"

"Seven mice!" said the cat. "I didn't know fairies ate mice too!"

"They're not for eating, silly! Do as you are told, and remember they must be alive!"

Cinderella soon returned with a fine pumpkin and the cat with seven mice he had caught in the cellar.

"Good!" exclaimed the fairy. With a flick of her magic wand — wonder of wonders! The pumpkin turned into a sparkling coach and the mice became six white horses, while the seventh mouse turned into a coachman, in a smart uniform and carrying a whip. Cinderella could hardly believe her eyes.

"I shall present you at Court. You will soon see that the Prince, in whose honour the ball is being held, will be enchanted by your loveliness. But remember! You must leave the ball at midnight and come home. For that is when the spell ends. Your coach will turn back into a pumpkin, the horses will become mice again and the coachman will turn back into a mouse, and you will be dressed again in rags and wearing clogs instead of these dainty little slippers! Do you understand?"

Cinderella smiled and said, "Yes, I understand!"

When Cinderella entered the ballroom at the palace, a hush fell. Everyone stopped in mid-sentence to admire her elegance, her beauty and grace.

"Who can that be?" people asked each other. The two stepsisters also wondered who the newcomer was, for never in a month of Sundays, would they ever have guessed that the beautiful girl was really poor Cinderella who talked to the cat!

When the prince set eyes on Cinderella, he was struck by her beauty. Walking over to her, he bowed deeply and asked her to dance. And to the great disappointment of all the young ladies, he danced with Cinderella all evening.

"Who are you, fair maiden?" the Prince kept asking her.

But Cinderella only replied: "What does it matter who I am! You will never see me again anyway."

"Oh, but I shall, I'm quite certain!" he replied.

Cinderella loses her glass slipper, by Edmund Dulac

Cinderella had a wonderful time at the ball, but, all of a sudden, she heard the sound of a clock: the first stroke of midnight! She remembered what the fairy had said, and without a word of goodbye she slipped from the Prince's arms and ran down the steps. As she ran she lost one of her slippers, but not for a moment did she dream of stopping to pick it up! If the last stroke of midnight were to sound... oh, what a disaster that would be! Out she fled and vanished into the night.

The Prince, who was now madly in love with her, picked up her slipper and said to his ministers, "Go and search everywhere for the girl whose foot this slipper fits. I will never be content until I find her!" So the ministers tried the slipper on the foot of all the girls... and on Cinderella's foot as well... Surprise! The slipper fit her perfectly.

"That awful untidy girl simply cannot have been at the ball," snapped the stepmother. "Tell the Prince he ought to marry one of my two daughters! Can't you see how ugly Cinderella is! Can't you see?"

Suddenly she broke off, for the fairy had appeared.

"That's enough!" she exclaimed, raising her magic wand. In a flash, Cinderella appeared in a splendid dress, shining with youth and beauty. Her stepmother and stepsisters gaped at her in amazement, and the ministers said,

"Come with us, fair maiden! The Prince awaits to present you with his engagement ring!" So Cinderella joyfully went with them, and lived happily ever after with her Prince.

And as for the cat, he just said "Meow"!

## *The Frog Prince*

In olden times when wishing still helped one, there lived a king whose daughters were all beautiful, but the youngest was so beautiful that the sun itself, which has seen so much, was astonished whenever it shone in her face. Close by the king's castle lay a great dark forest, and under an old lime-tree in the forest was a well, and when the day was very warm, the king's child went out into the forest and sat down by the side of the cool fountain, and when she was bored she took a golden ball, and threw it up on high and caught it, and this ball was her favorite play thing.

Now it so happened that on one occasion the princess's golden ball did not fall into the little hand which she was holding up for it, but on to the ground beyond, and rolled straight into the water. The king's daughter followed it with her eyes, but it vanished, and the well was deep, so deep that the bottom could not be seen. At this she began to cry, and cried louder and louder, and could not be comforted. And as she thus lamented someone said to her, "What ails you, king's daughter? You weep so that even a stone would show pity."

She looked round to the side from whence the voice came, and saw a frog stretching forth its big, ugly head from the water. "Ah, old water-splasher, is it you," she said, "I am weeping for my golden ball, which has fallen into the well." "Be quiet, and do not weep," answered the frog, "I can help you, but what will you give me if I bring your play thing up again?" "Whatever you will have, dear frog," said she, "My clothes, my pearls and jewels, and even the golden crown which I am wearing." The frog answered, "I do not care for your clothes, your pearls and jewels, nor for your golden crown, but if you will love me and let me be your companion and play-fellow, and sit by you at your little table, and eat off your little golden plate, and drink out of your little cup, and sleep in your little bed – if you will promise me this I will go down below, and bring you your golden ball up again."

"Oh yes," said she, "I promise you all you wish, if you will but bring me my ball back again." But she thought, "How the silly frog does talk. All he does is to sit in the water with the other frogs, and croak. He can be no companion to any human being."

But the frog when he had received this promise, put his head into the water and sank down; and in a short while came swimming up again with the ball in his mouth, and threw it on the grass. The king's daughter was delighted to see her pretty play thing once more, and picked it up, and ran away with it. "Wait, wait," said the frog. "Take me with you. I can't run as you can." But what did it avail him to scream his croak, croak, after her, as loudly as he could. She did not listen to it, but ran home and soon forgot the poor frog, who was forced to go back into his well again.

The next day when she had seated herself at table with the king and all the courtiers, and was eating from her little golden plate, something came creeping splish splash, splish splash, up the marble staircase, and when it had got to the top, it knocked at the door and cried, "Princess, youngest princess, open the door for me." She ran to see who was outside, but when she opened the door, there sat the frog in front of it. Then she slammed the door to, in great haste, sat down to dinner again, and was quite frightened. The king saw plainly that her heart was beating violently, and said, "My child, what are you so afraid of? Is there perchance a giant outside who wants to carry you away?"

"Ah, no," replied she. "It is no giant but a disgusting frog."

"What does a frog want with you?"

"Ah, dear father, yesterday as I was in the forest sitting by the well, playing, my golden ball fell into the water. And because I cried so, the frog brought it out again for me, and because he so insisted, I promised him he should be my companion, but I never thought he would be able to come out of his water. And now he is outside there, and wants to come in to me."

In the meantime it knocked a second time, and cried, "Princess, youngest princess, open the door for me, do you not know what you said to me yesterday by the cool waters of the well. Princess, youngest princess, open the door for me."

Then said the king, "That which you have promised must you perform. Go and let him in." She went and opened the door, and the frog hopped in and followed her, step by step, to her chair. There he sat and cried, "Lift me up beside you." She delayed, until at last the king commanded her to do it. Once the frog was on the chair he wanted to be on the table, and when he was on the table he said, "Now, push your little golden plate nearer to me that we may eat together." She did this, but it was easy to see that she did not do it willingly. The frog enjoyed what he ate, but almost every mouthful she took choked her. At length he said, "I have eaten and am satisfied, now I am tired, carry me into your little room and make your little silken bed ready, and we will both lie down and go to sleep."

The king's daughter began to cry, for she was afraid of the cold frog which she did not like to touch, and which was now to sleep in her pretty, clean little bed. But the king grew angry and said, "He who helped you when you were in trouble ought not afterwards to be despised by you." So she took hold of the frog with two fingers, carried him upstairs, and put him in a corner, but when she was in bed he crept to her and said, "I am tired, I want to sleep as well as you, lift me up or I will tell your father." At this she was terribly angry, and took him up and threw him with all her might

against the wall. “Now, will you be quiet, odious frog,” said she. But when he fell down he was no frog but a king’s son with kind and beautiful eyes. He by her father’s will was now her dear companion and husband. Then he told her how he had been bewitched by a wicked witch, and how no one could have delivered him from the well but herself, and that tomorrow they would go together into his kingdom.

Then they went to sleep, and the next morning when the sun awoke them, a carriage came driving up with eight white horses, which had white ostrich feathers on their heads, and were harnessed with golden chains, and behind stood the young king’s servant Faithful Henry.

Faithful Henry had been so unhappy when his master was changed into a frog, that he had caused three iron bands to be laid round his heart, lest it should burst with grief and sadness. The carriage was to conduct the young king into his kingdom. Faithful Henry helped them both in, and placed himself behind again, and was full of joy because of this deliverance. And when they had driven a part of the way the king’s son heard a cracking behind him as if something had broken. So he turned round and cried, “Henry, the carriage is breaking.”

“No, master, it is not the carriage. It is a band from my heart, which was put there in my great pain when you were a frog and imprisoned in the well.” Again and once again while they were on their way something cracked, and each time the king’s son thought the carriage was breaking, but it was only the bands which were springing from the heart of Faithful Henry because his master was set free and was happy.



### ***The Princess and the Pea***

There was once a prince, and he wanted a princess, but then she must be a real Princess. He travelled right around the world to find one, but there was always something wrong. There were plenty of princesses, but whether they were real princesses he had great difficulty in discovering; there was always something which was not quite right about them. So at last he had come home again, and he was very sad because he wanted a real princess so badly.

One evening there was a terrible storm; it thundered and lightnined and the rain poured down in torrents; indeed it was a fearful night.

In the middle of the storm somebody knocked at the town gate, and the old King himself sent to open it.

It was a princess who stood outside, but she was in a terrible state from the rain and the storm. The water streamed out of her hair and her clothes; it ran in at the top of her shoes and out at the heel, but she said that she was a real princess.

‘Well we shall soon see if that is true,’ thought the old Queen, but she said nothing. She went into the bedroom, took all the bed clothes off and laid a pea on the bedstead: then she took twenty mattresses and piled them on top of the pea, and then twenty feather beds on top of the mattresses. This was where the princess was to sleep that night. In the morning they asked her how she slept.

‘Oh terribly bad!’ said the princess. ‘I have hardly closed my eyes the whole night! Heaven knows what was in the bed. I seemed to be lying upon some hard thing, and my whole body is black and blue this morning. It is terrible!’

They saw at once that she must be a real princess when she had felt the pea through twenty mattresses and twenty feather beds. Nobody but a real princess could have such a delicate skin.

So the prince took her to be his wife, for now he was sure that he had found a real princess, and the pea was put into the Museum, where it may still be seen if no one has stolen it.

Now this is a true story.

### ***The Tortoise and the Hare***

Once upon a time there was a hare who, boasting how he could run faster than anyone else, was forever teasing tortoise for its slowness. Then one day, the irate tortoise answered back: “Who do you think you are? There’s no denying you’re swift, but even you can be beaten!” The hare squealed with laughter.

“Beaten in a race? By whom? Not you, surely! I bet there’s nobody in the world that can win against me, I’m so speedy. Now, why don’t you try?”

Annoyed by such bragging, the tortoise accepted the challenge. A course was planned, and the next day at dawn they stood at the starting line. The hare yawned sleepily as the meek tortoise trudged slowly off. When the hare saw how painfully slow his rival was, he decided, half asleep on his feet, to have a quick nap. “Take your time!” he said. “I’ll have forty winks and catch up with you in a minute.”

The hare woke with a start from a fitful sleep and gazed round, looking for the tortoise. But the creature was only a short distance away, having barely covered a third of the course. Breathing a sigh of relief, the hare decided he might as well have breakfast too, and off he went to munch some cabbages he had noticed in a nearby field. But the heavy meal and the hot sun made his eyelids droop. With a careless glance at the tortoise, now halfway along the course, he decided to have another snooze before flashing past the winning post. And smiling at the thought of the look on the tortoise’s face when it saw the hare speed by, he fell fast asleep and was soon snoring happily. The sun started to sink, below the horizon, and the tortoise, who had been plodding towards the winning post since morning, was scarcely a yard from the finish. At that very point, the hare woke with a jolt. He could see the tortoise a speck in the distance and away he dashed. He leapt and bounded at a great rate, his tongue lolling, and gasping for breath. Just a little more and he’d be first at the finish. But the hare’s last leap was just too late, for the tortoise had beaten him to the winning post. Poor hare! Tired and in disgrace, he slumped down beside the tortoise who was silently smiling at him.

“Slowly does it every time!” he said

### ***The Boy Who Cried Wolf***

A shepherd-boy, who watched a flock of sheep near a village, brought out the villagers three or four times by crying out, "Wolf! Wolf!" and when his neighbors came to help him, laughed at them for their pains.

The Wolf, however, did truly come at last. The Shepherd-boy, now really alarmed, shouted in an agony of terror: "Pray, do come and help me; the Wolf is killing the sheep"; but no one paid any heed to his cries, nor rendered any assistance. The Wolf, having no cause of fear, at his leisure lacerated or destroyed the whole flock.

There is no believing a liar, even when he speaks the truth.

## *Rumpelstiltskin*

Once there was a miller who was poor, but who had a beautiful daughter. Now it happened that he had to go and speak to the king, and in order to make himself appear important he said to him, "I have a daughter who can spin straw into gold."

The king said to the miller, "That is an art which pleases me well, if your daughter is as clever as you say, bring her to-morrow to my palace, and I will put her to the test."

And when the girl was brought to him he took her into a room which was quite full of straw, gave her a spinning-wheel and a reel, and said, "Now set to work, and if by to-morrow morning early you have not spun this straw into gold during the night, you must die."

Thereupon he himself locked up the room, and left her in it alone. So there sat the poor miller's daughter, and for the life of her could not tell what to do, she had no idea how straw could be spun into gold, and she grew more and more frightened, until at last she began to weep.

But all at once the door opened, and in came a little man, and said, "Good evening, mistress miller, why are you crying so?"

"Alas," answered the girl, "I have to spin straw into gold, and I do not know how to do it."

"What will you give me," said the manikin, "if I do it for you?"

"My necklace," said the girl.

The little man took the necklace, seated himself in front of the wheel, and whirr, whirr, whirr, three turns, and the reel was full, then he put another on, and whirr, whirr, whirr, three times round, and the second was full too. And so it went on until the morning, when all the straw was spun, and all the reels were full of gold.

By daybreak the king was already there, and when he saw the gold he was astonished and delighted, but his heart became only more greedy. He had the miller's daughter taken into another room full of straw, which was much larger, and commanded her to spin that also in one night if she valued her life. The girl knew not how to help herself, and was crying, when the door opened again, and the little man appeared, and said, "What will you give me if I spin that straw into gold for you?"

"The ring on my finger," answered the girl.

The little man took the ring, again began to turn the wheel, and by morning had spun all the straw into glittering gold.

The king rejoiced beyond measure at the sight, but still he had not gold enough, and he had the miller's daughter taken into a still larger room full of straw, and said, "You must spin this, too, in the course of this night, but if you succeed, you shall be my wife."

Even if she be a miller's daughter, thought he, I could not find a richer wife in the whole world.

When the girl was alone the manikin came again for the third time, and said, "What will you give me if I spin the straw for you this time also?"

"I have nothing left that I could give," answered the girl.

"Then promise me, if you should become queen, to give me your first child."

Who knows whether that will ever happen, thought the miller's daughter, and, not knowing how else to help herself in this strait, she promised the manikin what he wanted, and for that he once more spun the straw into gold.

And when the king came in the morning, and found all as he had wished, he took her in marriage, and the pretty miller's daughter became a queen.

A year after, she brought a beautiful child into the world, and she never gave a thought to the manikin. But suddenly he came into her room, and said, "Now give me what you promised."

The queen was horror-struck, and offered the manikin all the riches of the kingdom if he would leave her the child. But the manikin said, "No, something alive is dearer to me than all the treasures in the world."

Then the queen began to lament and cry, so that the manikin pitied her.

"I will give you three days, time," said he, "if by that time you find out my name, then shall you keep your child."

So the queen thought the whole night of all the names that she had ever heard, and she sent a messenger over the country to inquire, far and wide, for any other names that there might be. When the manikin came the next day, she began with Caspar, Melchior, Balthazar, and said all the names she knew, one after another, but to every one the little man said, "That is not my name."

On the second day she had inquiries made in the neighborhood as to the names of the people there, and she repeated to the manikin the most uncommon and curious. Perhaps your name is Shortribs, or Sheepshanks, or Laceleg, but he always answered, "That is not my name."

On the third day the messenger came back again, and said, "I have not been able to find a single new name, but as I came to a high mountain at the end of the forest, where the fox and the hare bid each other good night, there I saw a little house, and before the house a fire was burning, and round about the fire quite a ridiculous little man was jumping, he hopped upon one leg, and shouted -

'To-day I bake, to-morrow brew,  
the next I'll have the young queen's child.  
Ha, glad am I that no one knew  
that Rumpelstiltskin I am styled.'

You may imagine how glad the queen was when she heard the name. And when soon afterwards the little man came in, and asked, "Now, mistress queen, what is my name?"

At first she said, "Is your name Conrad?"

"No."

"Is your name Harry?"

"No."

"Perhaps your name is Rumpelstiltskin?"

"The devil has told you that! The devil has told you that," cried the little man, and in his anger he plunged his right foot so deep into the earth that his whole leg went in, and then in rage he pulled at his left leg so hard with both hands that he tore himself in two.

## *The Selfish Giant*

Oscar Wilde

Every afternoon, as they were coming from school, the children used to go and play in the Giant's garden.

It was a large lovely garden, with soft green grass. Here and there over the grass stood beautiful flowers like stars, and there were twelve peach-trees that in the spring-time broke out into delicate blossoms of pink and pearl, and in the autumn bore rich fruit. The birds sat on the trees and sang so sweetly that the children used to stop their games in order to listen to them. 'How happy we are here!' they cried to each other.

One day the Giant came back. He had been to visit his friend the Cornish ogre, and had stayed with him for seven years. After the seven years were over he had said all that he had to say, for his conversation was limited, and he determined to return to his own castle. When he arrived he saw the children playing in the garden.

'What are you doing here?' he cried in a very gruff voice, and the children ran away.

'My own garden is my own garden,' said the Giant; 'any one can understand that, and I will allow nobody to play in it but myself.' So he built a high wall all round it, and put up a notice-board.

TRESPASSERS

WILL BE

PROSECUTED

He was a very selfish Giant.

The poor children had now nowhere to play. They tried to play on the road, but the road was very dusty and full of hard stones, and they did not like it. They used to wander round the high wall when their lessons were over, and talk about the beautiful garden inside.

'How happy we were there,' they said to each other.

Then the Spring came, and all over the country there were little blossoms and little birds. Only in the garden of the Selfish Giant it was still Winter. The birds did not care to sing in it as there were no children, and the trees forgot to blossom. Once a beautiful flower put its head out from the grass, but when it saw the notice-board it was so sorry for the children that it slipped back into the ground again, and went off to sleep. The only people who were pleased were the Snow and the Frost. 'Spring has forgotten this garden,' they cried, 'so we will live here all the year round.' The Snow covered up the grass with her great white cloak, and the Frost painted all the trees silver. Then they invited the North Wind to stay with them, and he came. He was wrapped in furs, and he roared all day about the garden, and blew the chimney-pots down. 'This is a delightful spot,' he said, 'we must ask the Hail on a visit.' So the Hail came. Every day for three hours he rattled on the roof of the castle till he broke most of the slates, and then he ran round and round the garden as fast as he could go. He was dressed in grey, and his breath was like ice.

'I cannot understand why the Spring is so late in coming,' said the Selfish Giant, as he sat at the window and looked out at his cold white garden; 'I hope there will be a change in the weather.'

But the Spring never came, nor the Summer. The Autumn gave golden fruit to every garden, but to the Giant's garden she gave none. 'He is too selfish,' she said. So it was always Winter there, and the North Wind, and the Hail, and the Frost, and the Snow danced about through the trees.

One morning the Giant was lying awake in bed when he heard some lovely music. It sounded so sweet to his ears that he thought it must be the King's musicians passing by. It was really only a little linnet singing outside his window, but it was so long since he had heard a bird sing in his garden that it seemed to him to be the most beautiful music in the world. Then the Hail stopped dancing over his head, and the North Wind ceased roaring, and a delicious perfume came to him through the open casement. 'I believe the Spring has come at last,' said the Giant; and he jumped out of bed and looked out.

What did he see?

He saw a most wonderful sight. Through a little hole in the wall the children had crept in, and they were sitting in the branches of the trees. In every tree that he could see there was a little child. And the trees were so glad to have the children back again that they had covered themselves with blossoms, and were waving their arms gently above the children's heads. The birds were flying about and twittering with delight, and the flowers were looking up through the green grass and laughing. It was a lovely scene, only in one corner it was still Winter. It was the farthest corner of the garden, and in it was standing a little boy. He was so small that he could not reach up to the branches of the tree, and he was wandering all round it, crying bitterly. The poor tree was still quite covered with frost and snow, and the North

Wind was blowing and roaring above it. 'Climb up! little boy,' said the Tree, and it bent its branches down as low as it could; but the little boy was too tiny.

And the Giant's heart melted as he looked out. 'How selfish I have been!' he said; 'now I know why the Spring would not come here. I will put that poor little boy on the top of the tree, and then I will knock down the wall, and my garden shall be the children's playground for ever and ever.' He was really very sorry for what he had done.

So he crept downstairs and opened the front door quite softly, and went out into the garden. But when the children saw him they were so frightened that they all ran away, and the garden became Winter again. Only the little boy did not run, for his eyes were so full of tears that he did not see the Giant coming. And the Giant stole up behind him and took him gently in his hand, and put him up into the tree. And the tree broke at once into blossom, and the birds came and sang on it, and the little boy stretched out his two arms and flung them round the Giant's neck, and kissed him. And the other children, when they saw that the Giant was not wicked any longer, came running back, and with them came the Spring. 'It is your garden now, little children,' said the Giant, and he took a great axe and knocked down the wall. And when the people were going to market at twelve o'clock they found the Giant playing with the children in the most beautiful garden they had ever seen.

All day long they played, and in the evening they came to the Giant to bid him good-bye.

'But where is your little companion?' he said: 'the boy I put into the tree.' The Giant loved him the best because he had kissed him.

'We don't know,' answered the children; 'he has gone away.'

'You must tell him to be sure and come here to-morrow,' said the Giant. But the children said that they did not know where he lived, and had never seen him before; and the Giant felt very sad.

Every afternoon, when school was over, the children came and played with the Giant. But the little boy whom the Giant loved was never seen again. The Giant was very kind to all the children, yet he longed for his first little friend, and often spoke of him. 'How I would like to see him!' he used to say.

Years went over, and the Giant grew very old and feeble. He could not play about any more, so he sat in a huge armchair, and watched the children at their games, and admired his garden. 'I have many beautiful flowers,' he said; 'but the children are the most beautiful flowers of all.'

One winter morning he looked out of his window as he was dressing. He did not hate the Winter now, for he knew that it was merely the Spring asleep, and that the flowers were resting.

Suddenly he rubbed his eyes in wonder, and looked and looked. It certainly was a marvellous sight. In the farthest corner of the garden was a tree quite covered with lovely white blossoms. Its branches were all golden, and silver fruit hung down from them, and underneath it stood the little boy he had loved.

Downstairs ran the Giant in great joy, and out into the garden. He hastened across the grass, and came near to the child. And when he came quite close his face grew red with anger, and he said, 'Who hath dared to wound thee?' For on the palms of the child's hands were the prints of two nails, and the prints of two nails were on the little feet.

'Who hath dared to wound thee?' cried the Giant; 'tell me, that I may take my big sword and slay him.'

'Nay!' answered the child; 'but these are the wounds of Love.'

'Who art thou?' said the Giant, and a strange awe fell on him, and he knelt before the little child.

And the child smiled on the Giant, and said to him, 'You let me play once in your garden, to-day you shall come with me to my garden, which is Paradise.'

And when the children ran in that afternoon, they found the Giant lying dead under the tree, all covered with white blossoms.

## *Hansel and Gretel*

Brother's Grimm

Hard by a great forest dwelt a poor wood-cutter with his wife and his two children. The boy was called Hansel and the girl Gretel. He had little to bite and to break, and once, when great dearth fell on the land, he could no longer procure even daily bread.

Now when he thought over this by night in his bed, and tossed about in his anxiety. He groaned and said to his wife, "What is to become of us? How are we to feed our poor children, when we no longer have anything even for ourselves?"

"I'll tell you what, husband," answered the woman, "early tomorrow morning we will take the children out into the forest to where it is the thickest. There we will light a fire for them, and give each of them one more piece of bread, and then we will go to our work and leave them alone. They will not find the way home again, and we shall be rid of them."

"No, wife," said the man, "I will not do that. How can I bear to leave my children alone in the forest? The wild animals would soon come and tear them to pieces."

"Oh! you fool," said she, "then we must all four die of hunger, you may as well plane the planks for our coffins," and she left him no peace until he consented.

"But I feel very sorry for the poor children, all the same," said the man.

The two children had also not been able to sleep for hunger, and had heard what their step-mother had said to their father. Gretel wept bitter tears, and said to Hansel, "Now all is over with us."

"Be quiet, Gretel," said Hansel, "do not distress yourself, I will soon find a way to help us." And when the old folks had fallen asleep, he got up, put on his little coat, opened the door below, and crept outside.

The moon shone brightly, and the white pebbles which lay in front of the house glittered like real silver pennies. Hansel stooped and stuffed the little pocket of his coat with as many as he could get in. Then he went back and said to Gretel, "Be comforted, dear little sister, and sleep in peace, God will not forsake us," and he lay down again in his bed.

When day dawned, but before the sun had risen, the woman came and awoke the two children, saying, "Get up, you sluggards. We are going into the forest to fetch wood." She gave each a little piece of bread, and said, "There is something for your dinner, but do not eat it up before then, for you will get nothing else."

Gretel took the bread under her apron, as Hansel had the pebbles in his pocket. Then they all set out together on the way to the forest.

When they had walked a short time, Hansel stood still and peeped back at the house, and did so again and again. His father said, "Hansel, what are you looking at there and staying behind for? Pay attention, and do not forget how to use your legs."

"Ah, father," said Hansel, "I am looking at my little white cat, which is sitting up on the roof, and wants to say good-bye to me."

The wife said, "Fool, that is not your little cat, that is the morning sun which is shining on the chimneys."

Hansel, however, had not been looking back at the cat, but had been constantly throwing one of the white pebble-stones out of his pocket on the road.

When they had reached the middle of the forest, the father said, "Now, children, pile up some wood, and I will light a fire that you may not be cold."

Hansel and Gretel gathered brushwood together, as high as a little hill. The brushwood was lighted, and when the flames were burning very high, the woman said, "Now, children, lay yourselves down by the fire and rest, we will go into the forest and cut some wood. When we have done, we will come back and fetch you away."

Hansel and Gretel sat by the fire, and when noon came, each ate a little piece of bread, and as they heard the strokes of the wood-axe they believed that their father was near. It was not the axe, however, but a branch which he had fastened to a withered tree which the wind was blowing backwards and forwards. And as they had been sitting such a long time, their eyes closed with fatigue, and they fell fast asleep.

When at last they awoke, it was already dark night. Gretel began to cry and said, "How are we to get out of the forest now?"

But Hansel comforted her and said, "Just wait a little, until the moon has risen, and then we will soon find the way." And when the full moon had risen, Hansel took his little sister by the hand, and followed the pebbles which shone like newly-coined silver pieces, and showed them the way.

They walked the whole night long, and by break of day came once more to their father's house. They knocked at the door, and when the woman opened it and saw that it was Hansel and Gretel, she said, "You naughty children, why have you slept so long in the forest? We thought you were never coming back at all."

The father, however, rejoiced, for it had cut him to the heart to leave them behind alone.

Not long afterwards, there was once more great dearth throughout the land, and the children heard their mother saying at night to their father:

"Everything is eaten again, we have one half loaf left, and that is the end. The children must go, we will take them farther into the wood, so that they will not find their way out again. There is no other means of saving ourselves."

The man's heart was heavy, and he thought, "It would be better for you to share the last mouthful with your children." The woman, however, would listen to nothing that he had to say, but scolded and reproached him. He who says a must say b, likewise, and as he had yielded the first time, he had to do so a second time also.

The children, however, were still awake and had heard the conversation. When the old folks were asleep, Hansel again got up, and wanted to go out and pick up pebbles as he had done before, but the woman had locked the door, and Hansel could not get out. Nevertheless he comforted his little sister, and said, "Do not cry, Gretel, go to sleep quietly, the good God will help us."

Early in the morning came the woman, and took the children out of their beds. Their piece of bread was given to them, but it was still smaller than the time before. On the way into the forest Hansel crumbled his in his pocket, and often stood still and threw a morsel on the ground.

"Hansel, why do you stop and look round?" Said the father. "Go on."

"I am looking back at my little pigeon which is sitting on the roof, and wants to say good-bye to me, answered Hansel.

"Fool." Said the woman, "That is not your little pigeon, that is the morning sun that is shining on the chimney."

Hansel, however, little by little, threw all the crumbs on the path. The woman led the children still deeper into the forest, where they had never in their lives been before.

Then a great fire was again made, and the mother said, "Just sit there, you children, and when you are tired you may sleep a little. We are going into the forest to cut wood, and in the evening when we are done, we will come and fetch you away."

When it was noon, Gretel shared her piece of bread with Hansel, who had scattered his by the way. Then they fell asleep and evening passed, but no one came to the poor children.

They did not awake until it was dark night, and Hansel comforted his little sister and said, "Just wait, Gretel, until the moon rises, and then we shall see the crumbs of bread which I have strewn about, they will show us our way home again."

When the moon came they set out, but they found no crumbs, for the many thousands of birds which fly about in the woods and fields had picked them all up. Hansel said to Gretel, "We shall soon find the way."

But they did not find it. They walked the whole night and all the next day too from morning till evening, but they did not get out of the forest, and were very hungry, for they had nothing to eat but two or three berries, which grew on the ground. And as they were so weary that their legs would carry them no longer, they lay down beneath a tree and fell asleep.

It was now three mornings since they had left their father's house. They began to walk again, but they always came deeper into the forest, and if help did not come soon, they must die of hunger and weariness. When it was mid-day, they saw a beautiful snow-white bird sitting on a bough, which sang so delightfully that they stood still and listened to it. And when its song was over, it spread its wings and flew away before them, and they followed it until they reached a little house, on the roof of which it alighted. And when they approached the little house they saw that it was built of bread and covered with cakes, but that the windows were of clear sugar.

"We will set to work on that," said Hansel, "and have a good meal. I will eat a bit of the roof, and you Gretel, can eat some of the window, it will taste sweet."

Hansel reached up above, and broke off a little of the roof to try how it tasted, and Gretel leant against the window and nibbled at the panes. Then a soft voice cried from the parlor -

"Nibble, nibble, gnaw  
who is nibbling at my little house?"

The children answered -

"The wind, the wind,  
the heaven-born wind,"



and went on eating without disturbing themselves. Hansel, who liked the taste of the roof, tore down a great piece of it, and Gretel pushed out the whole of one round window-pane, sat down, and enjoyed herself with it.

Suddenly the door opened, and a woman as old as the hills, who supported herself on crutches, came creeping out. Hansel and Gretel were so terribly frightened that they let fall what they had in their hands.

The old woman, however, nodded her head, and said, "Oh, you dear children, who has brought you here? Do come in, and stay with me. No harm shall happen to you."

She took them both by the hand, and led them into her little house. Then good food was set before them, milk and pancakes, with sugar, apples, and nuts. Afterwards two pretty little beds were covered with clean white linen, and Hansel and Gretel lay down in them, and thought they were in heaven.

The old woman had only pretended to be so kind. She was in reality a wicked witch, who lay in wait for children, and had only built the little house of bread in order to entice them there. When a child fell into her power, she killed it, cooked and ate it, and that was a feast day with her. Witches have red eyes, and cannot see far, but they have a keen scent like the beasts, and are aware when human beings draw near. When Hansel and Gretel came into her neighborhood, she laughed with malice, and said mockingly, "I have them, they shall not escape me again."

Early in the morning before the children were awake, she was already up, and when she saw both of them sleeping and looking so pretty, with their plump and rosy cheeks, she muttered to herself, that will be a dainty mouthful.

Then she seized Hansel with her shrivelled hand, carried him into a little stable, and locked him in behind a grated door. Scream as he might, it would not help him. Then she went to Gretel, shook her till she awoke, and cried, "Get up, lazy thing, fetch some water, and cook something good for your brother, he is in the stable outside, and is to be made fat. When he is fat, I will eat him."

Gretel began to weep bitterly, but it was all in vain, for she was forced to do what the wicked witch commanded. And now the best food was cooked for poor Hansel, but Gretel got nothing but crab-shells. Every morning the woman crept to the little stable, and cried, "Hansel, stretch out your finger that I may feel if you will soon be fat."

Hansel, however, stretched out a little bone to her, and the old woman, who had dim eyes, could not see it, and thought it was Hansel's finger, and was astonished that there was no way of fattening him.

When four weeks had gone by, and Hansel still remained thin, she was seized with impatience and would not wait any longer.

"Now, then, Gretel," she cried to the girl, "stir yourself, and bring some water. Let Hansel be fat or lean, tomorrow I will kill him, and cook him."

Ah, how the poor little sister did lament when she had to fetch the water, and how her tears did flow down her cheeks. "Dear God, do help us," she cried. "If the wild beasts in the forest had but devoured us, we should at any rate have died together."

"Just keep your noise to yourself," said the old woman, "it won't help you at all."

Early in the morning, Gretel had to go out and hang up the cauldron with the water, and light the fire.

"We will bake first," said the old woman, "I have already heated the oven, and kneaded the dough." She pushed poor Gretel out to the oven, from which flames of fire were already darting. "Creep in," said the witch, "and see if it properly heated, so that we can put the bread in." And once Gretel was inside, she intended to shut the oven and let her bake in it, and then she would eat her, too.

But Gretel saw what she had in mind, and said, "I do not know how I am to do it. How do I get in?"

"Silly goose," said the old woman, "the door is big enough. Just look, I can get in myself." And she crept up and thrust her head into the oven.

Then Gretel gave her a push that drove her far into it, and shut the iron door, and fastened the bolt. Oh. Then she began to howl quite horribly, but Gretel ran away, and the godless witch was miserably burnt to death. Gretel, however, ran like lightning to Hansel, opened his little stable, and cried, "Hansel, we are saved. The old witch is dead."

Then Hansel sprang like a bird from its cage when the door is opened. How they did rejoice and embrace each other, and dance about and kiss each other. And as they had no longer any need to fear her, they went into the witch's house, and in every corner there stood chests full of pearls and jewels.

"These are far better than pebbles." Said Hansel, and thrust into his pockets whatever could be got in.

And Gretel said, "I, too, will take something home with me," and filled her pinafore full.

"But now we must be off," said Hansel, "that we may get out of the witch's forest."

When they had walked for two hours, they came to a great stretch of water.

"We cannot cross," said Hansel, "I see no foot-plank, and no bridge."

"And there is also no ferry," answered Gretel, "but a white duck is swimming there. If I ask her, she will help us over." Then she cried -

"Little duck, little duck, dost thou see,  
Hansel and Gretel are waiting for thee.  
There's never a plank, or bridge in sight,  
take us across on thy back so white."

The duck came to them, and Hansel seated himself on its back, and told his sister to sit by him.

"No," replied Gretel, "that will be too heavy for the little duck. She shall take us across, one after the other."

The good little duck did so, and when they were once safely across and had walked for a short time, the forest seemed to be more and more familiar to them, and at length they saw from afar their father's house. Then they began to run, rushed into the parlor, and threw themselves round their father's neck. The man had not known one happy hour since he had left the children in the forest. The woman, however, was dead. Gretel emptied her pinafore until pearls and precious stones ran about the room, and Hansel threw one handful after another out of his pocket to add to them. Then all anxiety was at an end, and they lived together in perfect happiness.

My tale is done, there runs a mouse, whosoever catches it, may make himself a big fur cap out of it.

## *Jack and the Beanstalk*

Once upon a time there lived a poor widow and her son Jack. One day, Jack's mother told him to sell their only cow. Jack went to the market and on the way he met a man who wanted to buy his cow. Jack asked, "What will you give me in return for my cow?" The man answered, "I will give you five magic beans!" Jack took the magic beans and gave the man the cow. But when he reached home, Jack's mother was very angry. She said, "You fool! He took away your cow and gave you some beans!" She threw the beans out of the window. Jack was very sad and went to sleep without dinner.

The next day, when Jack woke up in the morning and looked out of the window, he saw that a huge beanstalk had grown from his magic beans! He climbed up the beanstalk and reached a kingdom in the sky. There lived a giant and his wife. Jack went inside the house and found the giant's wife in the kitchen. Jack said, "Could you please give me something to eat? I am so hungry!" The kind wife gave him bread and some milk.

While he was eating, the giant came home. The giant was very big and looked very fearsome. Jack was terrified and went and hid inside. The giant cried, "Fee-fifo-fum, I smell the blood of an Englishman. Be he alive, or be he dead, I'll grind his bones to make my bread!" The wife said, "There is no boy in here!" So, the giant ate his food and then went to his room. He took out his sacks of gold coins, counted them and kept them aside. Then he went to sleep. In the night, Jack crept out of his hiding place, took one sack of gold coins and climbed down the beanstalk. At home, he gave the coins to his mother. His mother was very happy and they lived well for sometime.

climbed the beanstalk and went to the giant's house again. Once again, Jack asked the giant's wife for food, but while he was eating the giant returned. Jack leapt up in fright and went and hid under the bed. The giant cried, "Fee-fifo-fum, I smell the blood of an Englishman. Be he alive, or be he dead, I'll grind his bones to make my bread!" The wife said, "There is no boy in here!" The giant ate his food and went to his room. There, he took out a hen. He shouted, "Lay!" and the hen laid a golden egg. When the giant fell asleep, Jack took the hen and climbed down the beanstalk. Jack's mother was very happy with him.

After some days, Jack once again climbed the beanstalk and went to the giant's castle. For the third time, Jack met the giant's wife and asked for some food. Once again, the giant's wife gave him bread and milk. But while Jack was eating, the giant came home. "Fee-fi-fo-fum, I smell the blood of an Englishman. Be he alive, or be he dead, I'll grind his bones to make my bread!" cried the giant. "Don't be silly! There is no boy in here!" said his wife.

The giant had a magical harp that could play beautiful songs. While the giant slept, Jack took the harp and was about to leave. Suddenly, the magic harp cried, "Help master! A boy is stealing me!" The giant woke up and saw Jack with the harp. Furious, he ran after Jack. But Jack was too fast for him. He ran down the beanstalk and reached home. The giant followed him down. Jack quickly ran inside his house and fetched an axe. He began to chop the beanstalk. The giant fell and died.

Jack and his mother were now very rich and they lived happily ever after.

## *The Ugly Duckling* By Hans Christian Andersen

IT was lovely summer weather in the country, and the golden corn, the green oats, and the haystacks piled up in the meadows looked beautiful. The stork walking about on his long red legs chattered in the Egyptian language, which he had learnt from his mother.

The corn-fields and meadows were surrounded by large forests, in the midst of which were deep pools. It was, indeed, delightful to walk about in the country. In a sunny spot stood a pleasant old farm-house close by a deep river, and from the house down to the water side grew great burdock leaves, so high, that under the tallest of them a little child could stand upright. The spot was as wild as the center of a thick wood. In this snug retreat sat a duck on her nest, watching for her young brood to hatch; she was beginning to get tired of her task, for the little ones were a long time coming out of their shells, and she seldom had any visitors. The other ducks liked much better to swim about in the river than to climb the slippery banks, and sit under a burdock leaf, to have a gossip with her. At length one shell cracked, and then another, and from each egg came a living creature that lifted its head and cried, "Peep, peep." "Quack, quack," said the mother, and then they all quacked as well as they could, and looked about them on every side at the large green leaves. Their mother allowed them to look as much as they liked, because green is good for the eyes. "How large the world is," said the young ducks, when they found how much more room they now had than while they were inside the egg-shell. "Do you imagine this is the whole world?" asked the mother; "Wait till you have seen the garden; it stretches far beyond that to the parson's field, but I have never ventured to such a distance. Are you all out?" she continued, rising; "No, I declare, the largest egg lies there still. I wonder how long this is to last, I am quite tired of it;" and she seated herself again on the nest.

"Well, how are you getting on?" asked an old duck, who paid her a visit.

"One egg is not hatched yet," said the duck, "it will not break.

But just look at all the others, are they not the prettiest little ducklings you ever saw? They are the image of their father, who is so unkind, he never comes to see."

"Let me see the egg that will not break," said the duck; "I have no doubt it is a turkey's egg. I was persuaded to hatch some once, and after all my care and trouble with the young ones, they were afraid of the water. I quacked and clucked, but all to no purpose. I could not get them to venture in. Let me look at the egg. Yes, that is a turkey's egg; take my advice, leave it where it is and teach the other children to swim."

"I think I will sit on it a little while longer," said the duck; "as I have sat so long already, a few days will be nothing."

"Please yourself," said the old duck, and she went away.

At last the large egg broke, and a young one crept forth crying, "Peep, peep." It was very large and ugly. The duck stared at it and exclaimed, "It is very large and not at all like the others. I wonder if it really is a turkey. We shall soon find it out, however when we go to the water. It must go in, if I have to push it myself."

On the next day the weather was delightful, and the sun shone brightly on the green burdock leaves, so the mother duck took her young brood down to the water, and jumped in with a splash. "Quack, quack," cried she, and one after another the little ducklings jumped in. The water closed over their heads, but they came up again in an instant, and swam about quite prettily with their legs paddling under them as easily as possible, and the ugly duckling was also in the water swimming with them.

"Oh," said the mother, "that is not a turkey; how well he uses his legs, and how upright he holds himself! He is my own child, and he is not so very ugly after all if you look at him properly. Quack, quack! come with me now, I will take you into grand society, and introduce you to the farmyard, but you must keep close to me or you may be trodden upon; and, above all, beware of the cat."

When they reached the farmyard, there was a great disturbance, two families were fighting for an eel's head, which, after all, was carried off by the cat. "See, children, that is the way of the world," said the mother duck, whetting her beak, for she would have liked the eel's head herself. "Come, now, use your legs, and let me see how well you can behave. You must bow your heads prettily to that old duck yonder; she is the highest born of them all, and has Spanish blood, therefore, she is well off. Don't you see she has a red flag tied to her leg, which is something very grand, and a great honor for a duck; it shows that every one is anxious not to lose her, as she can be recognized both by man and beast. Come, now, don't turn your toes, a well-bred duckling spreads his feet wide apart, just like his father and mother, in this way; now bend your neck, and say 'quack.'"

The ducklings did as they were bid, but the other duck stared, and said, "Look, here comes another brood, as if there were not enough of us already! and what a queer looking object one of them is; we don't want him here," and then one flew out and bit him in the neck.

"Let him alone," said the mother; "he is not doing any harm."

"Yes, but he is so big and ugly," said the spiteful duck "and therefore he must be turned out."

"The others are very pretty children," said the old duck, with the rag on her leg, "all but that one; I wish his mother could improve him a little."

"That is impossible, your grace," replied the mother; "he is not pretty; but he has a very good disposition, and swims as well or even better than the others. I think he will grow up pretty, and perhaps be smaller; he has remained too long in the egg, and therefore his figure is not properly formed;" and then she stroked his neck and smoothed the feathers, saying, "It is a drake, and therefore not of so much consequence. I think he will grow up strong, and able to take care of himself."

"The other ducklings are graceful enough," said the old duck. "Now make yourself at home, and if you can find an eel's head, you can bring it to me."

And so they made themselves comfortable; but the poor duckling, who had crept out of his shell last of all, and looked so ugly, was bitten and pushed and made fun of, not only by the ducks, but by all the poultry. "He is too big," they all said, and the turkey cock, who had been born into the world with spurs, and fancied himself really an emperor, puffed himself out like a vessel in full sail, and flew at the duckling, and became quite red in the head with passion, so that the poor little thing did not know where to go, and was quite miserable because he was so ugly and laughed at by the whole farmyard. So it went on from day to day till it got worse and worse. The poor duckling was driven about by every one; even his brothers and sisters were unkind to him, and would say, "Ah, you ugly creature, I wish the cat would get you," and his mother said she wished he had never been born. The ducks pecked him, the chickens beat him, and the girl who fed the poultry kicked him with her feet. So at last he ran away, frightening the little birds in the hedge as he flew over the palings.

"They are afraid of me because I am ugly," he said. So he closed his eyes, and flew still farther, until he came out on a large moor, inhabited by wild ducks. Here he remained the whole night, feeling very tired and sorrowful.

In the morning, when the wild ducks rose in the air, they stared at their new comrade. "What sort of a duck are you?" they all said, coming round him.

He bowed to them, and was as polite as he could be, but he did not reply to their question. "You are exceedingly ugly," said the wild ducks, "but that will not matter if you do not want to marry one of our family."

Poor thing! he had no thoughts of marriage; all he wanted was permission to lie among the rushes, and drink some of the water on the moor. After he had been on the moor two days, there came two wild geese, or rather goslings, for they had not been out of the egg long, and were very saucy. "Listen, friend," said one of them to the duckling, "you are so ugly, that we like you very well. Will you go with us, and become a bird of passage? Not far from here is another moor, in which there are some pretty wild geese, all unmarried. It is a chance for you to get a wife; you may be lucky, ugly as you are."

"Pop, pop," sounded in the air, and the two wild geese fell dead among the rushes, and the water was tinged with blood. "Pop, pop," echoed far and wide in the distance, and whole flocks of wild geese rose up from the rushes. The sound continued from every direction, for the sportsmen surrounded the moor, and some were even seated on branches of trees, overlooking the rushes. The blue smoke from the guns rose like clouds over the dark trees, and as it floated away across the water, a number of sporting dogs bounded in among the rushes, which bent beneath them wherever they went. How they terrified the poor duckling! He turned away his head to hide it under his wing, and at the same moment a large terrible dog passed quite near him. His jaws were open, his tongue hung from his mouth, and his eyes glared fearfully. He thrust his nose close to the duckling, showing his sharp teeth, and then, "splash, splash," he went into the water without touching him, "Oh," sighed the duckling, "how thankful I am for being so ugly; even a dog will not bite me." And so he lay quite still, while the shot rattled through the rushes, and gun after gun was fired over him. It was late in the day before all became quiet, but even then the poor young thing did not dare to move. He waited quietly for several hours, and then, after looking carefully around him, hastened away from the moor as fast as he could.

He ran over field and meadow till a storm arose, and he could hardly struggle against it. Towards evening, he reached a poor little cottage that seemed ready to fall, and only remained standing because it could not decide on which side to fall first. The storm continued so violent, that the duckling could go no farther; he sat down by the cottage, and then he noticed that the door was not quite closed in consequence of one of the hinges having given way. There was therefore a narrow opening near the bottom large enough for him to slip through, which he did very quietly, and got a shelter for the night.

A woman, a tom cat, and a hen lived in this cottage. The tom cat, whom the mistress called, "My little son," was a great favorite; he could raise his back, and purr, and could even throw out sparks from his fur if it were stroked the wrong way. The hen had very short legs, so she was called "Chickie short legs." She laid good eggs, and her mistress

loved her as if she had been her own child. In the morning, the strange visitor was discovered, and the tom cat began to purr, and the hen to cluck.

"What is that noise about?" said the old woman, looking round the room, but her sight was not very good; therefore, when she saw the duckling she thought it must be a fat duck, that had strayed from home.

"Oh what a prize!" she exclaimed, "I hope it is not a drake, for then I shall have some duck's eggs. I must wait and see." So the duckling was allowed to remain on trial for three weeks, but there were no eggs.

Now the tom cat was the master of the house, and the hen was mistress, and they always said, "We and the world," for they believed themselves to be half the world, and the better half too. The duckling thought that others might hold a different opinion on the subject, but the hen would not listen to such doubts.

"Can you lay eggs?" she asked. "No." "Then have the goodness to hold your tongue."

"Can you raise your back, or purr, or throw out sparks?" said the tom cat. "No." "Then you have no right to express an opinion when sensible people are speaking."

So the duckling sat in a corner, feeling very low spirited, till the sunshine and the fresh air came into the room through the open door, and then he began to feel such a great longing for a swim on the water, that he could not help telling the hen.

"What an absurd idea," said the hen. "You have nothing else to do, therefore you have foolish fancies. If you could purr or lay eggs, they would pass away."

"But it is so delightful to swim about on the water," said the duckling, "and so refreshing to feel it close over your head, while you dive down to the bottom."

"Delightful, indeed!" said the hen, "why you must be crazy! Ask the cat, he is the cleverest animal I know, ask him how he would like to swim about on the water, or to dive under it, for I will not speak of my own opinion; ask our mistress, the old woman-- there is no one in the world more clever than she is. Do you think she would like to swim, or to let the water close over her head?"

"You don't understand me," said the duckling.

We don't understand you? Who can understand you, I wonder? Do you consider yourself more clever than the cat, or the old woman? I will say nothing of myself. Don't imagine such nonsense, child, and thank your good fortune that you have been received here. Are you not in a warm room, and in society from which you may learn something. But you are a chatterer, and your company is not very agreeable. Believe me, I speak only for your own good. I may tell you unpleasant truths, but that is a proof of my friendship. I advise you, therefore, to lay eggs, and learn to purr as quickly as possible."

"I believe I must go out into the world again," said the duckling.

"Yes, do," said the hen. So the duckling left the cottage, and soon found water on which it could swim and dive, but was avoided by all other animals, because of its ugly appearance.

Autumn came, and the leaves in the forest turned to orange and gold. then, as winter approached, the wind caught them as they fell and whirled them in the cold air. The clouds, heavy with hail and snow-flakes, hung low in the sky, and the raven stood on the ferns crying, "Croak, croak." It made one shiver with cold to look at him. All this was very sad for the poor little duckling.

One evening, just as the sun set amid radiant clouds, there came a large flock of beautiful birds out of the bushes. The duckling had never seen any like them before. They were swans, and they curved their graceful necks, while their soft plumage shone with dazzling whiteness. They uttered a singular cry, as they spread their glorious wings and flew away from those cold regions to warmer countries across the sea. As they mounted higher and higher in the air, the ugly little duckling felt quite a strange sensation as he watched them. He whirled himself in the water like a wheel, stretched out his neck towards them, and uttered a cry so strange that it frightened himself. Could he ever forget those beautiful, happy birds; and when at last they were out of his sight, he dived under the water, and rose again almost beside himself with excitement. He knew not the names of these birds, nor where they had flown, but he felt towards them as he had never felt for any other bird in the world. He was not envious of these beautiful creatures, but wished to be as lovely as they. Poor ugly creature, how gladly he would have lived even with the ducks had they only given him encouragement.

The winter grew colder and colder; he was obliged to swim about on the water to keep it from freezing, but every night the space on which he swam became smaller and smaller. At length it froze so hard that the ice in the water crackled as he moved, and the duckling had to paddle with his legs as well as he could, to keep the space from closing up. He became exhausted at last, and lay still and helpless, frozen fast in the ice.

Early in the morning, a peasant, who was passing by, saw what had happened. He broke the ice in pieces with his wooden shoe, and carried the duckling home to his wife. The warmth revived the poor little creature; but when the

children wanted to play with him, the duckling thought they would do him some harm; so he started up in terror, fluttered into the milk-pan, and splashed the milk about the room. Then the woman clapped her hands, which frightened him still more. He flew first into the butter-cask, then into the meal-tub, and out again. What a condition he was in! The woman screamed, and struck at him with the tongs; the children laughed and screamed, and tumbled over each other, in their efforts to catch him; but luckily he escaped. The door stood open; the poor creature could just manage to slip out among the bushes, and lie down quite exhausted in the newly fallen snow.

It would be very sad, were I to relate all the misery and privations which the poor little duckling endured during the hard winter; but when it had passed, he found himself lying one morning in a moor, amongst the rushes. He felt the warm sun shining, and heard the lark singing, and saw that all around was beautiful spring. Then the young bird felt that his wings were strong, as he flapped them against his sides, and rose high into the air. They bore him onwards, until he found himself in a large garden, before he well knew how it had happened. The apple-trees were in full blossom, and the fragrant elders bent their long green branches down to the stream which wound round a smooth lawn. Everything looked beautiful, in the freshness of early spring. From a thicket close by came three beautiful white swans, rustling their feathers, and swimming lightly over the smooth water. The duckling remembered the lovely birds, and felt more strangely unhappy than ever.

"I will fly to those royal birds," he exclaimed, "and they will kill me, because I am so ugly, and dare to approach them; but it does not matter: better be killed by them than pecked by the ducks, beaten by the hens, pushed about by the maiden who feeds the poultry, or starved with hunger in the winter."

Then he flew to the water, and swam towards the beautiful swans. The moment they spied the stranger, they rushed to meet him with outstretched wings.

"Kill me," said the poor bird; and he bent his head down to the surface of the water, and awaited death.

But what did he see in the clear stream below? His own image; no longer a dark, gray bird, ugly and disagreeable to look at, but a graceful and beautiful swan. To be born in a duck's nest, in a farmyard, is of no consequence to a bird, if it is hatched from a swan's egg. He now felt glad at having suffered sorrow and trouble, because it enabled him to enjoy so much better all the pleasure and happiness around him; for the great swans swam round the new-comer, and stroked his neck with their beaks, as a welcome.

Into the garden presently came some little children, and threw bread and cake into the water.

"See," cried the youngest, "there is a new one;" and the rest were delighted, and ran to their father and mother, dancing and clapping their hands, and shouting joyously, "There is another swan come; a new one has arrived."

Then they threw more bread and cake into the water, and said, "The new one is the most beautiful of all; he is so young and pretty." And the old swans bowed their heads before him.

Then he felt quite ashamed, and hid his head under his wing; for he did not know what to do, he was so happy, and yet not at all proud. He had been persecuted and despised for his ugliness, and now he heard them say he was the most beautiful of all the birds. Even the elder-tree bent down its bows into the water before him, and the sun shone warm and bright. Then he rustled his feathers, curved his slender neck, and cried joyfully, from the depths of his heart, "I never dreamed of such happiness as this, while I was an ugly duckling."

## *King Midas By Nathaniel Hawthorn*

ONCE upon a time, there lived a very rich man, and a king besides, whose name was Midas; and he had a little daughter, whom nobody but myself ever heard of, and whose name I either never knew, or have entirely forgotten. So, because I love odd names for little girls, I choose to call her Marygold.

This King Midas was fonder of gold than of anything else in the world. He valued his royal crown chiefly because it was composed of that precious metal. If he loved anything better, or half so well, it was the one little maiden who played so merrily around her father's footstool. But the more Midas loved his daughter, the more did he desire and seek for wealth. He thought, foolish man! that the best thing he could possibly do for this dear child would be to bequeath her the immensest pile of yellow, glistening coin that had ever been heaped together since the world was made. Thus, he gave all his thoughts and all his time to this one purpose. If ever he happened to gaze for an instant at the gold-tinted clouds of sunset, he wished that they were real gold, and that they could be squeezed safely into his strong box. When little Marygold ran to meet him, with a bunch of buttercups and dandelions, he used to say, "Poh, poh, child! If these flowers were as golden as they look, they would be worth the plucking!"

And yet, in his earlier days, before he was so entirely possessed of this insane desire for riches, King Midas had shown a great taste for flowers. He had planted a garden, in which grew the biggest and beautifullest and sweetest roses that any mortal ever saw or smelt. These roses were still growing in the garden, as large, as lovely, and as fragrant, as when Midas used to pass whole hours in gazing at them, and inhaling their perfume. But now, if he looked at them at all, it was only to calculate how much the garden would be worth if each of the innumerable rose petals were a thin plate of gold. And though he once was fond of music (in spite of an idle story about his ears, which were said to resemble those of an ass), the only music for poor Midas, now, was the chink of one coin against another.

At length (as people always grow more and more foolish, unless they take care to grow wiser and wiser), Midas had got to be so exceedingly unreasonable that he could scarcely bear to see or touch any object that was not gold. He made it his custom, therefore, to pass a large portion of every day in a dark and dreary apartment, under pound, at the basement of his palace. It was here that he kept his wealth. To this dismal hole --for it was little better than a dungeon-- Midas betook himself whenever he wanted to be particularly happy. Here, after carefully locking the door, he would take a bag of gold coin, or a gold cup as big as a washbowl, or a heavy golden bar, or a peek-measure of gold-dust, and bring them from the obscure corners of the room into the one bright and narrow sunbeam that fell from the dungeon-like window. He valued the sunbeam for no other reason but that his treasure would not shine without its help. And then would he reckon over the coins in the bag; toss up the bar, and catch it as it came down; sift the gold-dust through his fingers; look at the funny image of his own face, as reflected in the burnished circumference of the cup; and whisper to himself, "O Midas, rich King Midas, what a happy man art thou!" But it was laughable to see how the image of his face kept grinning at him, out of the polished surface of the cup. It seemed to be aware of his foolish behavior, and to have a naughty inclination to make fun of him.

Midas called himself a happy man, but felt that he was not yet quite so happy as he might be. The very tiptop of enjoyment would never be reached, unless the whole world were to become his treasure-room, and be filled with yellow metal which should be all his own.

Now, I need hardly remind such wise little people as you are, that in the old, old times, when King Midas was alive, a great many things came to pass which we should consider wonderful if they were to happen in our own day and country. And, on the other hand, a great many things take place nowadays, which seem not only wonderful to us, but at which the people of old times would have stared their eyes out. On the whole, I regard our own times as the strangest of the two; but, however that may be, I must go on with my story.

Midas was enjoying himself in his treasure-room, one day, as usual, when he perceived a shadow fall over the heaps of gold, and, looking suddenly up, what should he behold but the figure of a stranger, standing in the bright and narrow sunbeam! It was a young man, with a cheerful and ruddy face. Whether it was that the imagination of King Midas threw a yellow tinge over everything, or whatever the cause might be, he could not help fancying that the smile with which the stranger regarded him had a kind of golden radiance in it. Certainly, although his figure intercepted the sunshine, there was now a brighter gleam upon all the piled-up treasures than before. Even the remotest corners had their share of it, and were lighted up, when the stranger smiled, as with tips of flame and sparkles of fire.

As Midas knew that he had carefully turned the key in the lock, and that no mortal strength could possibly break into his treasure-room, he, of course, concluded that his visitor must be something more than mortal. It is no matter about telling you who he was. In those days, when the earth was comparatively a new affair, it was supposed to be often the resort of beings endowed with supernatural power, and who used to interest themselves in the Joys and sorrows of men, women, and children, half playfully and half seriously. Midas had met such beings before now, and was not sorry to



meet one of them again. The stranger's aspect, indeed, was so good-humored and kindly, if not beneficent, that it would have been unreasonable to suspect him of intending any mischief. It was far more probable that he came to do Midas a favor. And what could that favor be, unless to multiply his heaps of treasure?

The stranger gazed about the room; and when his lustrous smile had glistened upon all the golden objects that were there, he turned again to Midas.

"You are a wealthy man, friend Midas !" he observed. "I doubt whether any other four walls, on earth, contain so much gold as you have contrived to pile up in this room."

"I have done pretty well--pretty well," answered Midas in a discontented tone. "But, after all, it is but a trifle, when you consider that it has taken me my whole life to get it together. If one could live a thousand years, he might have time to grow rich !"

"What !" exclaimed the stranger. "Then you are not satisfied?" Midas shook his head.

"And pray what would satisfy you?" asked the stranger. "Merely for the curiosity of the thing, I should be glad to know."

Midas paused and meditated. He felt a presentiment that this stranger, with such a golden luster in his good-humored smile, had come hither with both the power and the purpose of gratifying his utmost wishes. Now, therefore, was the fortunate moment, when he had but to speak, and obtain whatever possible, or seemingly impossible thing, it might come into his head to ask. So he thought, and thought, and thought, and heaped up one golden mountain upon another, in his imagination, without being able to imagine them big enough. At last, a bright idea occurred to King Midas. It seemed really as bright as the glistening metal which he loved so much. Raising his head, he looked the lustrous stranger in the face.

"Well, Midas," observed his visitor, "I see that you have at length hit upon something that will satisfy you. Tell me your wish."

"It is only this," replied Midas. "I am weary of collecting my treasures with so much trouble, and beholding the heap so diminutive, after I have done my best. I wish everything that I touch to be changed to gold !"

The stranger's smile grew so very broad, that it seemed to fill the room like an outburst of the sun, gleaming into a shadowy dell, where the yellow autumnal leaves--for so looked the lumps and particles of gold--lie strewn in the glow of light.

"The Golden Touch !" exclaimed he. "You certainly deserve credit, friend Midas, for striking out so brilliant a conception. But are you quite sure that this will satisfy you?"

"How could it fail?" said Midas.

"And will you never regret the possession of it?"

"What could induce me ?" asked Midas. "I ask nothing else, to render me perfectly happy."

"Be it as you wish, then," replied the stranger, waving his hand in token of farewell. "Tomorrow at sunrise, you will find yourself gifted with the Golden Touch."

The figure of the stranger then became exceedingly bright, and Midas involuntarily closed his eyes. On opening them again, he beheld only one yellow sunbeam in the room, and, all around him, the glistening of the precious metal which he had spent his life in hoarding up.

Whether Midas slept as usual that night, the story does not say. Asleep or awake, however, his mind was probably in the state of a child's, to whom a beautiful new plaything has been promised in the morning. At any rate, day had hardly peeped over the hills, when King Midas was broad awake, and, stretching his arms out of bed, began to touch the objects that were within reach. He was anxious to prove whether the Golden Touch had really come, according to the stranger's promise. So he laid his finger on a chair by the bedside, and on various other things, but was grievously disappointed to perceive that they remained of exactly the same substance as before. Indeed, he felt very much afraid that he had only dreamed about the lustrous stranger, or else that the latter had been making game of him. And what a miserable affair would it be, if, after all his hopes, Midas must content himself with what little gold he could scrape together by ordinary means, instead of creating it by a touch!

All this while, it was only the gray of the morning, with but a streak of brightness along the edge of the sky, where Midas could not see it. He lay in a very disconsolate mood, regretting the down-fall of his hopes, and kept growing sadder and sadder, until the earliest sunbeam shone through the window, and gilded the ceiling over his head. It seemed to Midas that this bright yellow sunbeam was reflected in rather a singular way on the white covering of the bed. Looking more closely, what was his astonishment and delight, when he found that his linen fabric had been transmuted to what seemed a woven texture of the purest and brightest gold ! The Golden Touch had come to him with the first sunbeam!

Midas started up, in a kind of joyful frenzy, and ran about the room, grasping at everything that happened to be in his way. He seized one of the bed-posts, and it became immediately a fluted golden pillar. He pulled aside a window curtain, in order to admit a clear spectacle of the wonders which he was performing; and the tassel grew heavy in his hand--a mass of gold. He took up a book from the table. At his first touch, it assumed the appearance of such a splendidly bound and gilt-edged volume as one often meets with nowadays; but, on running his fingers through the leaves, behold ! it was a bundle of thin golden plates, in which all the wisdom of the book had grown illegible. He hurriedly put on his clothes, and was enraptured to see himself in a magnificent suit of gold cloth, which retained its flexibility and softness, although it burdened him a little with its weight. He drew out his handkerchief, which little Marygold had hemmed for him. That was likewise gold, with the dear child's neat and pretty stitches running all along the border, in gold thread !

Somehow or other, this last transformation did not quite please King Midas. He would rather that his little daughter's handiwork should have remained just the same as when she climbed his knee and put it into his hand.

But it was not worthwhile to vex himself about a trifle. Midas now took his spectacles from his pocket, and put them on his nose, in order that he might see more distinctly what he was about. In those days, spectacles for common people had not been invented, but were already worn by kings; else, how could Midas have had any? To his great perplexity, however, excellent as the glasses were, he discovered that he could not possibly see through them. But this was the most natural thing in the world; for, on taking them off, the transparent crystals turned out to be plates of yellow metal, and, of course, were worthless as spectacles, though valuable as gold. It struck Midas as rather inconvenient that, with all his wealth, he could never again be rich enough to own a pair of serviceable spectacles.

"It is no great matter, nevertheless," said he to himself, very philosophically. "We cannot expect any great good, without its being accompanied with some small inconvenience. The Golden Touch is worth the sacrifice of a pair of spectacles, at least, if not of one's very eyesight. My own eyes will serve for ordinary purposes, and little Marygold will soon be old enough to read to me."

Wise King Midas was so exalted by his good fortune, that the palace seemed not sufficiently spacious to contain him. He therefore went down stairs, and smiled, on observing that the balustrade of the staircase became a bar of burnished gold, as his hand passed over it, in his descent. He lifted the door-latch (it was brass only a moment ago, but golden when his fingers quitted it), and emerged into the garden. Here, as it happened, he found a great number of beautiful roses in full bloom, and others in all the stages of lovely bud and blossom. Very delicious was their fragrance in the morning breeze. Their delicate blush was one of the fairest sights in the world; so gentle, so modest, and so full of sweet tranquility, did these roses seem to be.

But Midas knew a way to make them far more precious, according to his way of thinking, than roses had ever been before. So he took great pains in going from bush to bush, and exercised his magic touch most indefatigably; until every individual flower and bud, and even the worms at the heart of some of them, were changed to gold. By the time this good work was completed, King Midas was summoned to breakfast; and as the morning air had given him an excellent appetite, he made haste back to the palace.

What was usually a king's breakfast in the days of Midas, I really do not know, and cannot stop now to investigate. To the best of my belief, however, on this particular morning, the breakfast consisted of hot cakes, some nice little brook trout, roasted potatoes, fresh boiled eggs, and coffee, for King Midas himself, and a bowl of bread and milk for his daughter Marygold. At all events, this is a breakfast fit to set before a king; and, whether he had it or not, King Midas could not have had a better.

Little Marygold had not yet made her appearance. Her father ordered her to be called, and, seating himself at table, awaited the child's coming, in order to begin his own breakfast. To do Midas justice, he really loved his daughter, - and loved her so much the more this morning, on account of the good fortune which had befallen him. It was not a great while before he heard her coming along the passageway crying bitterly. This circumstance surprised him, because Marygold was one of the cheerfullest little people whom you would see in a summer's day, and hardly shed a thimbleful of tears in a twelvemonth. When Midas heard her sobs, he determined to put little Marygold into better spirits, by an agreeable surprise; so, leaning across the table, he touched his daughter's bowl (which was a china one, with pretty figures all around it), and transmuted it to gleaming gold.

Meanwhile, Marygold slowly and disconsolately opened the door, and showed herself with her apron at her eyes, still sobbing as if her heart would break.

"How now, my little lady !" cried Midas. "Pray what is the matter with you, this bright morning?"

Marygold, without taking the apron from her eyes, held out her hand, in which was one of the roses which Midas had so recently transmuted.

"Beautiful!" exclaimed her father. "And what is there in this magnificent golden rose to make you cry?"

"Ah, dear father!" answered the child, as well as her sobs would let her; "it is not beautiful, but the ugliest flower that ever grew! As soon as I was dressed I ran into the garden to gather some for you; because I know you like them, and like them the better when gathered by your little daughter. But, oh dear, dear me! What do you think has happened? Such a misfortune! All the roses, that smelled so sweetly and had so many lovely blushes, are blighted and spoilt! They are grown quite yellow, as you see this one, and have no longer any fragrance! What can have been the matter with them?"

"Poh, my dear little girl--pray don't cry about it!" said Midas, who was ashamed to confess that he himself had wrought the change which so greatly afflicted her. "Sit down and eat your bread and milk! You will find it easy enough to exchange a golden rose like that (which will last hundreds of years) for an ordinary one which would wither in a day."

"I don't care for such roses as this!" cried Mary-gold, tossing it contemptuously away. "It has no smell, and the hard petals prick my nose!" The child now sat down to table, but was so occupied with her grief for the blighted roses that she did not even notice the wonderful transmutation of her china bowl. Perhaps this was all the better; for Marygold was accustomed to take pleasure in looking at the queer figures, and strange trees and houses, that were painted on the circumference of the bowl; and these ornaments were now entirely lost in the yellow hue of the metal.

Midas, meanwhile, had poured out a cup of coffee, and, as a matter of course, the coffee-pot, whatever metal it may have been when he took it up, was gold when he set it down. He thought to himself, that it was rather an extravagant of splendor, in a king of his simple habits, to breakfast off a service of gold, and began to be puzzled with the difficulty of keeping his treasures safe. The cupboard and the kitchen would no longer be a secure place of deposit for articles so valuable as golden bowls and coffee-pots.

Amid these thoughts, he lifted a spoonful of coffee to his lips, and, sipping it, was astonished to perceive that, the instant his lips touched the liquid, it became molten gold, and, the next moment hardened into a lump!

"Ha!" exclaimed Midas, rather aghast. "What is the matter, father?" asked little Mary-gold, gazing at him, with the tears still standing in her eyes.

"Nothing, child, nothing!" said Midas. "Eat your milk, before it gets quite cold."

He took one of the nice little trouts on his plate, and, by way of experiment, touched its tail with his finger. To his horror, it was immediately transmuted from an admirably fried brook-trout into a gold-fish, though not one of those gold-fishes which people often keep in glass globes, as ornaments for the parlor. No; but it was really a metallic fish, and looked as if it had been very cunningly made by the nicest goldsmith in the world. Its little bones were now golden wires; its fins and tail were thin plates of gold; and there were the marks of the fork in it, and all the delicate, frothy appearance of a nicely fried fish, exactly imitated in metal. A very pretty piece of work, as you may suppose; only King Midas, just at that moment, would much rather have had a real trout in his dish than this elaborate and valuable imitation of one.

"I don't quite see," thought he to himself, "how I am to get any breakfast!"

He took one of the smoking-hot cakes, and had scarcely broken it, when, to his cruel mortification, though, a moment before, it had been of the whitest wheat, it assumed the yellow hue of Indian meal. To say the truth, if it had really been a hot Indian cake, Midas would have prized it a good deal more than he now did, when its solidity and increased weight made him too bitterly sensible that it was gold. Almost in despair, he helped himself to a boiled egg, which immediately underwent a change similar to those of the trout and the cake. The egg, indeed, might have been mistaken for one of those which the famous goose, in the story-book, was in the habit of laying; but King Midas was the only goose that had had anything to do with the matter.

"Well, this is a quandary!" thought he, leaning back in his chair, and looking quite enviously at little Marygold, who was not eating her bread and milk with great satisfaction. "Such a costly breakfast before me, and nothing that can be eaten!"

Hoping that, by dint of great dispatch, he might avoid what he now felt to be a considerable inconvenience, King Midas next snatched a hot potato, and attempted to cram it into his mouth, and swallow it in a hurry. But the Golden Touch was too nimble for him. He found his mouth full, not of mealy potato, but of solid metal, which so burnt his tongue that he roared aloud, and, jumping up from the table, began to dance and stamp about the room both with pain and afright.

"Father, dear father!" cried little Marygold, who was a very affectionate child, "pray what is the matter? Have you burnt your mouth?"

"Ah, dear child," groaned Midas, dolefully, "I don't know what is to become of your poor father!"

And, truly, my dear little folks, did you ever hear of such a pitiable case in all your lives? Here was literally the richest breakfast that could be set before a king, and its very richness made it absolutely good for nothing. The poorest

laborer, sitting down to his crust of bread and cup of water, was far better off than King Midas, whose delicate food was really worth its weight in gold. And what was to be done ? Already, at breakfast, Midas was excessively hungry. Would he be less so by dinner-time ? And how ravenous would be his appetite for supper, which must undoubtedly consist of the same sort of indigestible dishes as those now before him ! How many days, think you, would he survive a ..continuance of this rich fare ?

These reflections so troubled wise King Midas, that he began to doubt whether, after all, riches are the one desirable thing in the world, or even the most desirable. But this was only a passing thought. So fascinated was Midas with the glitter of the yellow metal, that he would still have refused to give up the Golden Touch for so paltry a consideration as a breakfast. Just imagine what a price for one meal's victuals. It would have been the same as paying millions and millions of money (and as many millions more as would take forever to reckon up) for some fried trout, an egg, a potato, a hot cake, and a cup of coffee !

"It would be quite too dear," thought Midas.

Nevertheless, so great was his hunger, and the perplexity of his situation, that he again groaned aloud, and very grievously, too. Our pretty Marygold could endure it no longer. She sat, a moment, gazing at her father, and trying, with all the might of her little wits, to find out what was the matter with him. Then, with a sweet and sorrowful impulse to comfort him, she started from her chair, and, running to Midas, threw her arms affectionately about his knees. He bent down and kissed her. He felt that his little daughter's love was worth a thousand times more than he had gained by the Golden Touch.

"My precious, precious Marygold !" cried he.

But Marygold made no answer.

Alas, what had he done? How fatal was the gift which the stranger bestowed! The moment the lips of Midas touched Marygold's forehead, a change had taken place. Her sweet, rosy face, so full of affection as it had been, assumed a glittering yellow color, with yellow tear-drops, congealing on her cheeks. Her beautiful brown ringlets took the same tint. Her soft and tender little form grew hard and inflexible within her father's encircling arms. Oh, terrible misfortune! The victim of his insatiable desire for wealth, little Marygold was a human child no longer, but a golden statue !

Yes, there she was, with the questioning look of love, grief, and pity, hardened into her face. It was the prettiest and most woeful sight that ever mortal saw. All the features and tokens of Marygold were there; even the beloved little dimple remained in her gold chin. But, the more perfect was the resemblance, the greater was the father's agony at beholding this golden image, which was all that was left him of a daughter. It had been a favorite phrase of Midas, whenever he felt particularly fond of the child, to say that she was worth her weight in gold. And now the phrase had become literally true. And now, at last, when it was too late, he felt how infinitely a warm and tender heart that loved him, exceeded in value all the wealth that could be piled up betwixt the earth and sky !

It would be too sad a story, if I were to tell you how Midas, in the fulness of all his gratified desires, began to wring his hands and bemoan himself; and how he could neither bear to look at Marygold, nor yet to look away from her. Except when his eyes were fixed on the image, he could not possibly believe that she was changed to gold. But, stealing another glance, there was the precious little figure, with a yellow tear-drop on its yellow cheek, and a look so piteous and tender, that it seemed as if that very expression must needs soften the gold and make it flesh again. This, however, could not be. So Midas had only to wring his hands, and to wish that he were the poorest man in the wide world, if the loss of all his wealth might bring back the faintest rose-color to his dear child's face.

While he was in this tumult of despair, he suddenly beheld a stranger standing near the door. Midas bent down his head, without speaking; for he recognized the same figure which had appeared to him, the day before, in the treasure-room, and had bestowed on him this disastrous faculty of the Golden Touch. The stranger's countenance still wore a smile, which seemed to shed a yellow luster all about the room, and gleamed on little Marygold's image, and on the other objects that had been transmuted by the touch of Midas.

"Well, friend Midas," said the stranger, '{pray how do you succeed with the Golden Touch.?' Midas shook his head.

"I am very miserable," said he.

"Very miserable, indeed !" exclaimed the stranger. "And how happens that? Have I not faithfully kept my promise with you? Have you not everything that your heart desired?"

"Gold is not everything," answered Midas. "And I have lost all that my heart really cared for."

"Ah! So you have made a discovery, since yesterday?" observed the stranger. "Let us see, then. Which of these two things do you think is really worth the most--the gift of the Golden Touch, or one cup of clear cold water?"

"O blessed water !" exclaimed Midas. "It will never moisten my parched throat again!"

"The Golden Touch," continued the stranger, "or a crust of bread?"

"A piece of bread," answered Midas, "is worth.' all the gold on earth !"

"The Golden Touch," asked the stranger, "or your own little Marygold, warm, soft and loving as she was an hour ago?"

"Oh my child, my dear child I" cried poor Midas, wringing his hands. "I would not have given that one small dimple in her chin for the power of changing this whole big earth into a solid lump of gold I"

"You are wiser than you were, King Midas !" said the stranger, looking seriously at him. "Your own heart, I perceive, has not been entirely changed from flesh to gold. Were it so, your ease would indeed be desperate. But you appear to be still capable of understanding that the commonest things, such as lie within everybody's grasp, are more valuable than the riches which so many mortals sigh and struggle after. Tell me, now, do you sincerely desire to rid yourself of this Golden Touch ?"

"It is hateful to me !" replied Midas. A fly settled on his nose, but immediately fell to the floor; for it, too, had become gold. Midas shuddered.

"Go, then," said the stranger, "and plunge into the river that glides past the bottom of your garden. Take likewise a vase of the same water, and sprinkle it over any object that you may desire to change back again from gold into its former substance. If you do this in earnestness and sincerity, it may possibly repair the mischief which your avarice has occasioned." King Midas bowed low; and when he lifted his head, the lustrous stranger had vanished.

You will easily believe that Midas lost no time in snatching up a great earthen pitcher (but, alas me! it was no longer earthen after he touched it), hastening to the river-side. As he scampered and forced his way through the shrubbery, it was positively marvellous to see how the foliage yellow behind him, as if the autumn had there, and nowhere else. On reaching the river's brink, he plunged headlong in, without waiting so much as to pull off his shoes.

"Poof! poof! poof!" snorted King Midas, as his head emerged out of the water. "Well; this is really a refreshing bath, and I think it must have quite washed away the Golden Touch. And now for filling my pitcher !" As he dipped the pitcher into the water, it gladdened his very heart to see it change from gold

into the same good, honest earthen vessel which it had been before he touched it. He was conscious, also, of a change within himself. A cold, hard, and heavy weight seemed to have gone out of his bosom. No doubt, his heart had been gradually losing its human substance, and transmuting itself into insensible metal, but had now softened back again into flesh. Perceiving a violet, that grew on the bank of the river, Midas touched it with his finger, and was overjoyed to find that the delicate flower retained its purple hue, instead of undergoing a yellow blight. The curse of the Golden Touch had, therefore, really been removed from him.

King Midas hastened back to the palace; and, I suppose, the servants knew not what to make of it when they saw their royal master so carefully bringing home an earthen pitcher of water. But that water, which was to undo all the mischief that his folly had wrought, was more precious to Midas than an ocean of molten gold could have been. The first thing he did, as you need hardly be told, to sprinkle it by handfuls over the golden figure of little Marygold.

No sooner did it fall on her than you would laughed to see how the rosy color came back the dear child's cheek! and how she began to sneeze and sputter!--and how astonished she was to find herself dripping wet, and her father still throwing more water over her!

"Pray do not, dear father!" cried she. "See how you have wet my nice frock, which I put on only. this morning !" For Marygold did not know that she had been a little golden statue; nor could she remember anything that had happened since the moment she ran with outstretched arms to comfort King Midas. '

Her father did not think it necessary to tell his beloved child how very foolish he had been, but contented himself with showing how much wiser he had now grown. For this purpose, he led little Marygold into the garden, where he sprinkled the remainder of the water over the rose-bushes, and with such good effect that above five thousand roses recovered their beautiful bloom. There were two circumstances, however, which, as long as he lived, used to put King Midas in mind of the Golden Touch. One was, that the sands of the river sparkled like gold; the other, that little Marygold's hair had now a golden tinge, which he had never observed in it before she had been transmuted by the effect of his kiss. This change of hue was really an improvement, and made Marygold's hair richer than in her babyhood.

When King Midas had grown quite an old man and used to trot Marygold's children on his knee he was fond of telling them this marvellous story, pretty much as I have told it to you. And then would he stroke their glossy ringlets, and tell them that their hair, likewise, had a rich shade of gold, which they had inherited from their mother.

"And to tell you the truth, my precious little folks," quoth King Midas, diligently trotting the children all the while, "ever since that morning, I have hated the very sight of all other gold, save this !"

## *The Farmer and the Money Lender*

### THE FARMER AND THE MONEY-LENDER

THERE was once a Farmer who suffered much at the hands of a Money-lender. Good harvests or bad the Farmer was always poor, the Money-lender rich. At the last, when he hadn't a farthing left, the Farmer went to the Money-lender's house and said, "You can't squeeze water from a stone, and, as you have nothing to get by me now, you might tell me the secret of becoming rich."

"My friend," returned the Money-lender piously, "riches come from Ram--ask him."

"Thank you, I will!" replied the simple Farmer; so he prepared three girdle-cakes to last him on the journey, and set out to find Ram.

First he met a Brahman, and to him he gave a cake, asking him to point out the road to Ram; but the Brahman only took the cake, and went on his way without a word. Next the Farmer met a yogi, or devotee, and to him he gave a cake, without receiving any help in return. At last he came upon a poor man sitting under a tree, and finding out he was hun-gry the kindly Farmer gave him his last cake, and, sitting down to rest beside him, entered into conversation.

"And where are you going?" asked the poor man, at length.

"Oh, I have a long journey before me, for I am going to find Ram!" replied the Farmer. "I don't suppose you could tell me which way to go?"

"Perhaps I can," said the poor man, smiling, "for I am Ram! What do you want of me?"

Then the Farmer told the whole story, and Ram, taking pity on him, gave him a conch-shell, and showed him how to blow it in a particular way, saying: "Remember! whatever you wish for, you have only to blow the conch that way, and your wish will be fulfilled. Only, have a care of that Money-lender, for even magic is not proof against his wiles!" The Farmer went back to his village rejoicing. In fact, the Money-lender noticed his high spirits at once, and said to him-self, "Some good fortune must have befallen the stupid fel-low, to make him hold his head so jauntily." Therefore he went over to the simple Farmer's house, and congratulated him on his good fortune in such cunning words, pretending to have heard all about it, that before long the Farmer found himself telling the whole story--all except the secret of blow-ing the conch, for, with all his simplicity, the Farmer was not quite such a fool as to tell that.

Nevertheless, the Money-lender determined to have the conch by hook or by crook, and, as he was villain enough not to stick at trifles, he waited for a favorable opportunity and stole the conch.

But, after nearly bursting himself with blowing the conch in every conceivable way, he was obliged to give up the secret as a bad job. However, being determined to succeed, he went back to the Farmer, and said coolly: "Look here! I've got your conch, but I can't use it; you haven't got it, so it's clear you can't use it either. Business is at a standstill unless we make a bargain. Now, I promise to give you back your conch, and never to interfere with your using it, on one condition, which is this--whatever you get from it, I am to get double."

"Never!" cried the Farmer; "that would be the old busi-ness all over again!"

"Not at all!" replied the wily Money-lender; "you will have your share! Now, don't be a dog in the manger, for, if you get all you want, what can it matter to you if I am rich or poor?"

At last, though it went sorely against the grain to be of any benefit to a Money-lender, the Farmer was forced to yield, and from that time, no matter what he gained by the power of the conch, the Money-lender gained double. And the knowledge that this was so, preyed upon the Farmer's mind day and night, so that he had no satisfaction-out of anything. At last there came a very dry season--so dry that the Farmer's crops withered for want of rain. Then he blew

his conch, and wished for a well to water them, and lo! there was the well, but the Money-lender had two!--two beautiful new wells! This was too much for any Farmer to stand; and our friend brooded over it, and brooded over it, till at last a bright idea came into his head. He seized the conch, blew it loudly, and cried out, "Oh, Ram! I wish to be blind of one eye!" And so he was, in a twinkling, but the Money-lender, of course, was blind of both, and in trying to steer his way between the two new wells he fell into one, and was drowned.

Now, this true story shows that a Farmer once got the better of a Money-lender--but only by losing one of his eyes.

## *The Fisherman and His Wife*

### THE FISHERMAN AND HIS WIFE

THERE was once a fisherman who lived with his wife in a miserable little hovel close to the sea. He went to fish every day, and he fished and fished, and at last one day, when he was sitting looking deep down into the shining water, he felt something on his line. When he hauled it up there was a great flounder on the end of the line. The flounder said to him: "Look here, fisherman, don't you kill me; I am no common flounder, I am an enchanted prince! What good will it do you to kill me ? I sha'n't be good to eat; put me back into the water, and leave me to swim about."

"Well," said the fisherman, "you need not make so many words about it. I am quite ready to put back a flounder that can talk." And so saying, he put back the flounder into the shining water, and it sank down to the bottom, leaving a streak of blood behind it.

Then the fisherman got up and went back to his wife in the hovel. "Husband," she said, "hast thou caught nothing today?"

"No," said the man; "all I caught was one flounder, and he said he was an enchanted prince, so I let him go swim again."

"Didst thou not wish for anything then ?" asked the good wife.

"No," said the man; "what was there to wish for?"

"Alas!" said his wife; "isn't it bad enough always to live in this wretched hovel ? Thou mightest at least have wished for a nice clean cottage. Go back and call him; tell him I want a pretty cottage; he will surely give us that!"

"Alas," said the man, "what am I to go back there for ?"

"Well," said the woman, "it was thou who caught him and let him go again; for certain he will do that for thee. Be off now!"

The man was still not very willing to go, but he did not want to vex his wife, and at last he went back to the sea.

He found the sea no longer bright and shining, but dull and green. He stood by it and said:

"Flounder, flounder in the sea,  
Prythee, hearken unto me:  
My wife, Ilsebil, will have her own way  
Whatever I wish, whatever I say. "-

The flounder came swimming up, and said: "Well, what do you want ?"

"Alas!" said the man; "I had to call you, for my wife said I ought to have wished for something, as I caught you. She doesn't want to live in our miserable hovel any longer; she wants a pretty cottage."

"Go home again, then," said the flounder; "she has her wish fully."

The man went home and found his wife no longer in the old hut, but a pretty little cottage stood in its place, and his wife was sitting on a bench by the door.

She took him by the hand, and said: "Come and look in here--isn't this much better?"



They went inside and found a pretty sitting-room, and a bedroom with a bed in it, a kitchen, and a larder furnished with everything of the best in tin and brass, and every possible requisite. Outside there was a little yard with chickens and ducks, and a little garden full of vegetables and fruit. "Look!" said the woman, "is not this nice?"

"Yes," said the man; "and so let it remain. We can live here very happily."

"We will see about that," said the woman, and with that they ate something and went to bed.

Everything went well for a week or more, and then said the wife: "Listen, husband; this cottage is too cramped, and the garden is too small. The flounder might have given us a bigger house. I want to live in a big stone castle. Go to the flounder, and tell him to give us a castle."

"Alas, wife!" said the man; "the cottage is good enough for us; what should we do with a castle?"

"Never mind," said his wife; "do thou but go to the flounder, and he will manage it."

"Nay, wife," said the man; "the flounder gave us the cottage. I don't want to go back; as likely as not he'll be angry."

"Go, all the same," said the woman. "He can do it easily enough, and willingly into the bargain. Just go!"

The man's heart was heavy, and he was very unwilling to go. He said to himself: "It's not right." But at last he went.

He found the sea was no longer green; it was still calm, but dark violet and gray. He stood by it and said:

"Flounder, flounder in the sea,  
Prythee, hearken unto me:  
My wife, Ilsebil, will have her own way  
Whatever I wish, whatever I say. "

"Now, what do you want?" said the flounder.

"Alas," said the man, half scared, "my wife wants a big stone castle."

"Go home again," said the flounder; "she is standing at the door of it."

Then the man went away, thinking he would find no house, but when he got back he found a great stone palace, and his wife standing at the top of the steps, waiting to go in.

She took him by the hand and said, "Come in with me."

With that they went in and found a great hall paved with marble slabs, and numbers of servants in attendance, who opened the great doors for them. The walls were hung with beautiful tapestries, and the rooms were furnished with golden chairs and tables, while rich carpets covered the floors, and crystal chandeliers hung from the ceilings. The tables groaned under every kind of delicate food and the most costly wines. Outside the house there was a great courtyard, with stabling for horses, and cows, and many fine carriages. Beyond this there was a great garden filled with the loveliest flowers, and fine fruit trees. There was also a park, half a mile long, and in it were stags and hinds, and hares, and everything of the kind one could wish for.

"Now," said the woman, "is not this worth having?"

"Oh, yes," said the man; "and so let it remain. We will live in this beautiful palace and be content."

"We will think about that," said his wife, "and sleep upon it."

With that they went to bed.

Next morning the wife woke up first; day was just dawning, and from her bed she could see the beautiful country around her. Her husband was still asleep, but she pushed him with her elbow, and said, "Husband, get up and peep out of the window. See here, now, could we not be king over all this land? Go to the flounder. We will be king."

"Alas, wife," said the man, "what should we be king for? I don't want to be king."

"Ah," said his wife, "if thou wilt not be king, I will. Go to the flounder. I will be king."

"Alas, wife," said the man, "whatever dost thou want to be king for? I don't like to tell him."

"Why not?" said the woman. "Go thou must. I will be king."

So the man went; but he was quite' sad because his wife would be king.

"It is not right," he said; "it is not right."

When he reached the sea, he found it dark, gray, and rough, and evil-smelling. He stood there and said:

"Flounder, flounder in the sea,  
Prythee, hearken unto me:  
My wife, Ilsebil, will have her own way  
Whatever I wish, whatever I say."

"Now, what does she want?" said the flounder.

"Alas," said the man, "she wants to be king now."

"Go back. She is king already," said the flounder.

So the man went back, and when he reached the palace he found that it had grown much larger, and a great tower had been added, with handsome decorations. There was a sentry at the door, and numbers of soldiers were playing drums and trumpets. As soon as he got inside the house, he found everything was marble and gold; and the hangings were of velvet, with great golden tassels. The doors of the saloon were thrown wide open and he saw the whole court assembled. His wife was sitting on a lofty throne of gold and diamonds; she wore a golden crown, and carried in one hand a scepter of pure gold. On each side of her stood her ladies in a long row, each one a head shorter than the next.

He stood before her, and said, "Alas, wife, art thou now king?"

"Yes," she said; "now I am king."

He stood looking at her for some time, and then he said, "Ah, wife, it is a fine thing for thee to be king; now we will not wish to be anything more."

"Nay, husband," she answered, quite uneasily, "I find the time hangs very heavy on my hands. I can't bear it any longer. Go back to the flounder. King I am, but I must also be emperor."

"Alas, wife," said the man, "why dost thou now want to be emperor?"

"Husband," she answered, "go to the flounder. Emperor I will be."

"Alas, wife," said the man, "emperor he can't make thee, and I won't ask him. There is only one emperor in the country; and emperor the flounder cannot make thee, that he can't."

"What?" said the woman. "I am king, and thou art but my husband. To him thou must go, and that right quickly. If he can make a king, he can also make an emperor. Emperor I will be, so quickly go."

He had to go, but he was quite frightened. And as he went, he thought, "This won't end well; emperor is too shameless. The flounder will make an end of the whole thing."

With that he came to the sea, but now he found it quite black, and heaving up from below in great waves. It tossed to and fro, and a sharp wind blew over it, and the man trembled. So he stood there, and said:

"Flounder, flounder in the sea,  
Prythee, hearken unto me:  
My wife, Ilsebil, will have her own way  
Whatever I wish, whatever I say."

"What does she want now?" said the flounder.

"Alas, flounder," he said, "my wife wants to be emperor." "Go back," said the flounder. "She is emperor."

So the man went back, and when he got to the door, he found that the whole palace was made of polished marble, with alabaster figures and golden decorations. Soldiers marched up and down before the doors, blowing their trumpets and beating their drums. Inside the palace, counts, barons, and dukes walked about as attendants, and they opened to him the doors, which were of pure gold.

He went in, and saw his wife sitting on a huge throne made of solid gold. It was at least two miles high. She had on her head a great golden crown, set with diamonds, three yards high. In one hand she held the scepter, and in the other the ball of empire. On each side of her stood the gentlemen-at-arms in two rows, each one a little smaller than the other, from giants two miles high, down to the tiniest dwarf no bigger than my little finger. She was surrounded by princes and dukes.

Her husband stood still, and said, "Wife, art thou now emperor?"

"Yes," said she; "now I am emperor."

Then he looked at her for some time, and said, "Alas, wife, how much better off art thou for being emperor?"

"Husband," she said, "what art thou standing there for? Now I am emperor, I mean to be pope! Go back to the flounder."

"Alas, wife," said the man, "what wilt thou not want? Pope thou canst not be. There is only one pope in Christendom. That's more than the flounder can do."

"Husband," she said, "pope I will be; so go at once. I must be pope this very day."

"No, wife," he said, "I dare not tell him. It's no good; it's too monstrous altogether. The flounder cannot make thee pope."

"Husband," said the woman, "don't talk nonsense. If he can make an emperor, he can make a pope. Go immediately. I am emperor, and thou art but my husband, and thou must obey."

So he was frightened, and went; but he was quite dazed. He shivered and shook, and his knees trembled. A great wind arose over the land, the clouds flew across the sky, and it grew as dark as night; the leaves fell from the trees, and the water foamed and dashed upon the shore. In the distance the ships were being tossed to and fro on the waves, and he heard them firing signals of distress. There was still a little patch of blue in the sky among the dark clouds, but toward the south they were red and heavy, as in a bad storm. In despair, he stood and said:

"Flounder, flounder in the sea,  
Prythee, hearken unto me:  
My wife, Ilsebil, will have her own way  
Whatever I wish, whatever I say. "

"Now, what does she want?" said the flounder.

"Alas" said the man, "she wants to be pope."

"Go back. Pope she is," said the flounder.

So back he went, and he found a great church, surrounded with palaces. He pressed through the crowd, and inside he found thousands and thousand of lights, and his wife, entirely clad in gold, was sitting on a still higher throne, with three golden crowns upon her head, and she was surrounded with priestly state. On each side of her were two rows of candles, the biggest as thick as a tower, down to the tiniest little taper. Kings and emperors were on their knees before her, kissing her shoe.

"Wife," said the man, looking at her, "art thou now pope?" "Yes," said she; "now I am pope."

So there he stood gazing at her, and it was like looking at a shining sun.

"Alas, wife," he said, "art thou better off for being pope?" At first she sat as stiff as a post, without stirring. Then he said, "Now, wife, be content with being pope; higher thou canst not go."

"I will think about that," said the woman, and with that they both went to bed. Still she was not content, and could not sleep for her inordinate desires. The man slept well and soundly, for he had walked about a great deal in the day; but his wife could think of nothing but what further grandeur she could demand. When the dawn reddened the sky, she raised herself up in bed and looked out of the window, and when she saw the sun rise she said:

"Ha! can I not cause the sun and the moon to rise? Husband?" she cried, digging her elbow into his side, "wake up and go to the flounder. I will be lord of the universe."

Her husband, who was still more than half asleep, was so shocked that he fell out of bed. He thought he must have heard wrong. He rubbed his eyes and said

"Alas, wife, what didst thou say?"

"Husband," she said, "if I cannot be lord of the universe, and cause the sun and moon to set and rise, I shall not be able to bear it. I shall never have another happy moment."

She looked at him so wildly that it caused a shudder to run through him.

"Alas, wife," he said, falling on his knees before her, "the flounder can't do that. Emperor and pope he can make, but that is indeed beyond him. I pray thee, control thyself and remain pope."

Then she flew into a terrible rage. Her hair stood on end; she panted for breath, and screamed:

"I won't bear it any longer; wilt thou go?"

Then he pulled on his trousers and tore away like a madman. Such a storm was raging that he could hardly keep his feet; houses and trees quivered and swayed, mountains trembled, and the rocks rolled into the sea. The sky was pitchy black; it thundered and lightened, and the sea ran in black waves, mountains high, crested with white foam. He shrieked out, but could hardly make himself heard:

"Flounder, flounder in the sea,  
Prythee, hearken unto me:  
My wife, Ilsebil, will have her own way  
Whatever I wish, whatever I say."

"Now, what does she want?" asked the flounder.

"Alas," he said, "she wants to be Lord of the Universe."

"Now she must go back to her old hovel," said the flounder; "and there you will find her."

And there they are to this very day!

## *Puss in Boots*

ONCE upon a time there was a miller, who was so poor that at his death he had nothing to leave to his three children but his mill, his ass, and his cat. The eldest son took the mill, and the second the ass, so there was nothing left for poor Jack but to take Puss.

Jack could not help thinking that he had been treated shabbily. "My brothers will be able to earn an honest livelihood," he sighed, "but as for me, though Puss may feed himself by catching mice, I shall certainly die of hunger."

The cat, who had overheard his young master, jumped upon his shoulder, and, rubbing himself gently against his cheek, began to speak. "Dear master," said he, "do not grieve. I am not as useless as you think-me, and will undertake to make your fortune for you, if only you will buy me a pair of boots, and give me that old bag."

Now, Jack had very little money to spare, but, knowing Puss to be a faithful old friend, he made up his mind to trust him, and so spent all he possessed upon a smart pair of boots made of buff-colored leather. They fitted perfectly, so Puss put them on, took the old bag which his master gave him, and trotted off to a neighboring warren in which he knew there was a great number of rabbits.

Having put some bran and fresh parsley into the bag, he laid it upon the ground, hid himself, and waited. Presently two foolish little rabbits, sniffing the food, ran straight into the bag,' when the clever cat drew the strings and caught them.

Then, slinging the bag over his shoulder, he hastened off to the palace, where he asked to speak to the King. Having been shown into the royal presence, he bowed and said:

"Sire, my Lord the Marquis of Carabas has commanded me to present these rabbits to your Majesty, with his respects."

The monarch having desired his thanks to be given to the Marquis (who, as you will guess, was really our poor Jack), then ordered his head cook to dress the rabbits for dinner, and he and his daughter partook of them with great enjoyment. Day by day Puss brought home stores of good food, so that he and his master lived in plenty, and besides that, he did not fail to keep the King and his courtiers well supplied with game.

Sometimes he would lay a brace of partridges at the royal feet, sometimes a fine large hare, but whatever it was, it always came with the same message: "From my Lord the Marquis of Carabas"; so that everyone at Court was talking of this strange nobleman, whom no one had ever seen, but who sent such generous presents to his Majesty.

At length Puss decided that it was time for his master to be introduced at Court. So one day he persuaded him to go and bathe in a river near, having heard that the King would soon pass that way. Jack stood shivering up to his neck in water, wondering what was to happen next, when suddenly the King's carriage appeared in sight. At once Puss began to call out as loudly as he could:

"Help, help! My Lord the Marquis of Carabas is drowning!"

The King put his head out of the carriage window and, recognizing the cat, ordered his attendants to go to the assistance of the Marquis. While Jack was being taken out of the water, Puss ran to the King and told him that some robbers had run off with his master's clothes whilst he was bathing, the truth of the matter being that the cunning cat had hidden them under a stone.

On hearing this story the King instantly despatched one of his grooms to fetch a handsome suit of purple and gold from the royal wardrobe, and arrayed in this, Jack, who was a fine, handsome fellow, looked so well that no one for a moment supposed but that he was some noble foreign lord.

The King and his daughter were so pleased with his appearance that they invited him into their carriage. At first Jack hesitated, for he felt a little shy about sitting next to a Princess, but she smiled at him so sweetly, and was so kind and gentle, that he soon forgot his fears and fell in love with her there and then. As soon as Puss had seen his master seated in the royal carriage, he whispered directions to the coachman, and then ran on ahead as fast as he could trot, until he came to a field of corn, where the reapers were busy.

"Reapers," said he fiercely, "the King will shortly pass this way. If he should ask you to whom this field belongs, remember that you say, 'To the Marquis of Carabas.' If you dare to disobey me, I will have you all chopped up as fine as mincemeat." The reapers were so afraid the cat would keep his word that they promised to obey. Puss then ran on and told all the other laborers whom he met to give the same answer, threatening them with terrible punishments if they disobeyed. Now, the King was in a very good humor, for the day was fine, and he found the Marquis a very pleasant companion, so he told the coachman to drive slowly, in order that he might admire the beautiful country. "What a fine field of wheat!" he said presently. "To whom does it belong?" Then the men answered as they had been told: "To our Lord the Marquis of Carabas." Next they met a herd of cattle, and again to the King's question, "To whom do they belong?" they were told, "To the Marquis of Carabas." And it was the same with everything they passed.

The Marquis listened with the greatest astonishment, and thought what a very wonderful cat his dear Puss was; and the King was delighted to find that his new friend was as wealthy as he was charming.

Meanwhile Puss, who was well in advance of the Royal party, had arrived at a stately castle, which belonged to a cruel Ogre, the richest ever known, for all the

lands the King had admired so much belonged to him. Puss knocked at the door and asked to see the Ogre, who received him quite civilly, for he had never seen a cat in boots before, and the sight amused him.

So he and Puss were soon chatting away together.

The Ogre, who was very conceited, began to boast of what clever tricks he could play, and Puss sat and listened, with a smile on his face.

"I once heard, great Ogre," he said at last, "that you possessed the power of changing yourself into any kind of animal you chose--a lion or an elephant, for instance."

"Well, so I can," replied the Ogre.

"Dear me! how much I should like to see you do it now," said Puss sweetly.

The Ogre was only too pleased to find a chance of showing how very clever he was, so he promised to transform himself into any animal Puss might mention.

"Oh! I will leave the choice to you," said the cat politely. Immediately there appeared where the Ogre had been seated, an enormous lion, roaring, and lashing with its tail, and looking as though it meant to gobble the cat up in a trice. Puss was really very much frightened, and, jumping out of the window, managed to scramble on to the roof, though he could scarcely hold on to the tiles on account of his high-heeled boots.

There he sat, refusing to come down, until the Ogre changed himself into his natural form, and laughingly called to him that he would not hurt him. Then Puss ventured back into the room, and began to compliment the Ogre on his cleverness.

"Of course, it was all very wonderful," he said, "but it would be more wonderful still if you, who are so great and fierce, could transform yourself into some timid little creature, such as a mouse. That, I suppose, would be quite impossible?"

"Not at all," said the vain Ogre; "one is quite as easy to me as the other, as I will show you." And in a moment a little brown mouse was frisking about all over the floor, whilst the Ogre had vanished.

"Now or never," said Puss, and with a spring he seized the mouse and gobbled it up as fast as he could.

At the same moment all the gentlemen and ladies whom the wicked Ogre had



held in his castle under a spell, became disenchanted. They were so grateful to their deliverer that they would have done anything to please him, and readily agreed to enter into the service of the Marquis of Carabas when Puss asked them to do so.

So now the cat had a splendid castle, which he knew to be full of heaped-up treasures, at his command, and ordering a magnificent feast to be prepared, he took up his station at the castle gates to welcome his master and the royal party. As soon as the castle appeared in sight, the King enquired whose it was, "For," said he, "I have never seen a finer."

Then Puss, bowing low, threw open the castle gates, and cried:

"May it please your Majesty to alight and enter the home of the most noble the Marquis of Carabas."

Full of surprise, the King turned to the Marquis. "Is this splendid castle indeed yours?" he asked. "Not even our own palace is more beautiful, and doubtless it is as splendid within as without."

Puss then helped his Majesty to alight, and conducted him into the castle, where a group of noble gentlemen and fair ladies were waiting to receive them. Jack, or the Marquis as he was now called, gave his hand to the young Princess, and led her to the banquet.

Long and merrily they feasted, and when at length the guests rose to depart, the King embraced the Marquis, and called him his dear son; and the Princess blushed so charmingly and looked so shy and sweet, that Jack ventured to lay his heart and fortune at her feet.

And so the miller's son married the King's daughter, and there were great rejoicings throughout the land.

On the evening of the wedding-day a great ball was given, to which princes and noblemen from far and near were invited. Puss opened the ball, wearing for the occasion a pair of boots made of the finest leather, with gold tassels and scarlet heels. I only wish you could have seen him.

When the old King died, the Princess and her husband reigned in his stead, and their most honored and faithful friend at Court was Puss himself, for his master never forgot to whom he owed all his good fortune: He lived upon the daintiest meat and most delicious cream, and was petted and made much of all the days of his life, and never again ran after mice and rats, except for exercise and amusement.

## *The Elves and the Shoemaker*

THERE was once a shoemaker who, through no fault of his own, had become so poor that at last he had only leather enough left for one pair of shoes. At evening he cut out the shoes which he intended to begin upon the next morning, and since he had a good conscience, he lay down quietly, said his prayers, and fell asleep.

In the morning when he had prayed, as usual, and was preparing to sit down to work, he found the pair of shoes standing finished on his table. He was amazed, and could not understand it in the least. He took the shoes in his hand to examine them more closely. They were so neatly sewn that not a stitch was out of place, and were as good as the work of a master-hand.

Soon after a purchaser came in, and as he was much pleased with the shoes, he paid more than the ordinary price for them, so that the shoemaker was able to buy leather for two pairs with the money.

He cut them out in the evening, and next day, with fresh courage was about to go to work; but he had no need to, for when he got up, the shoes were finished, and buyers were not lacking. These gave him so much money that he was able to buy leather for four pairs of shoes.

Early next morning he found the four pairs finished, and so it went on; what he cut out at evening was finished in the morning, so that he was soon again in comfortable circumstances, and became a well-to-do man.

Now it happened one evening, not long before Christmas, when he had cut out shoes as usual, that he said to his wife: "How would it be if we were to sit up to-night to see who it is that lends us such a helping hand?"

The wife agreed, lighted a candle, and they hid themselves in the corner of the room behind the clothes which were hanging there.

At midnight came two little naked men, who sat down at the shoemaker's table, took up the cut-out work, and began with their tiny fingers to stitch, sew, and hammer so neatly and quickly, that the shoemaker could not believe his eyes. They did not stop till everything was quite finished, and stood complete on the table; then they ran swiftly away.

The next day the wife said: "The little men have made us rich, and we ought to show our gratitude. They run about with nothing on, and must freeze with cold. Now I will make them little shirts, coats, waistcoats, and hose, and will even knit them stout stockings, and you shall make them each a pair of shoes."

The husband agreed, and at evening, when they had everything ready, they laid out the presents on the table, and hid themselves to see how the little men would behave.

At midnight they came skipping in, and were about to set to work; but instead of the leather ready cut out, they found the charming little clothes.

At first they were surprised, then excessively delighted. With the greatest speed they put on and smoothed down the pretty clothes, singing:

"Now we're dressed so fine and neat,  
Why cobble more for others' feet?"

Then they hopped and danced about, and leaped over chairs and tables and out at the door. Henceforward, they came back no more, but the shoemaker fared well as long as he lived, and had good luck in all his undertakings.

## *Snow White and the Seven Dwarves*

Once upon a time in the middle of winter, when the flakes of snow were falling like feathers from the sky, a queen sat at a window sewing, and the frame of the window was made of black ebony. And whilst she was sewing and looking out of the window at the snow, she pricked her finger with the needle, and three drops of blood fell upon the snow. And the red looked pretty upon the white snow, and she thought to herself, would that I had a child as white as snow, as red as blood, and as black as the wood of the window-frame.

Soon after that she had a little daughter, who was as white as snow, and as red as blood, and her hair was as black as ebony, and she was therefore called little snow-white. And when the child was born, the queen died.

After a year had passed the king took to himself another wife. She was a beautiful woman, but proud and haughty, and she could not bear that anyone else should surpass her in beauty. She had a wonderful looking-glass, and when she stood in front of it and looked at herself in it, and said,

looking-glass, looking-glass, on the wall,  
who in this land is the fairest of all.

The looking-glass answered,  
thou, o queen, art the fairest of all.

Then she was satisfied, for she knew that the looking-glass spoke the truth.

But Snow-white was growing up, and grew more and more beautiful, and when she was seven years old she was as beautiful as the day, and more beautiful than the queen herself. And once when the queen asked her looking-glass,

looking-glass, looking-glass, on the wall,  
who in this land is the fairest of all.

It answered, thou art fairer than all who are here, lady queen.  
But more beautiful still is snow-white, as I ween.

Then the queen was shocked, and turned yellow and green with envy. From that hour, whenever she looked at snow-white, her heart heaved in her breast, she hated the girl so much. And envy and pride grew higher and higher in her heart like a weed, so that she had no peace day or night. She called a huntsman, and said, take the child away into the forest. I will no longer have her in my sight. Kill her, and bring me back her lung and liver as a token. The huntsman obeyed, and took her away, but when he had drawn his knife, and was about to pierce snow-white's innocent heart, she began to weep, and said, ah dear huntsman, leave me my life. I will run away into the wild forest, and never come home again.

And as she was so beautiful the huntsman had pity on her and said, run away, then, you poor child. The wild beasts will soon have devoured you, thought he, and yet it seemed as if a stone had been rolled from his heart since it was no longer needful for him to kill her. And as a young bear just then came running by he stabbed it, and cut out its lung and liver and took them to the queen as proof that the child was dead. The cook had to salt them, and the wicked queen ate them, and thought she had eaten the lung and liver of snow-white.

But now the poor child was all alone in the great forest, and so terrified that she looked at all the leaves on the trees, and did not know what to do. Then she began to run, and ran over sharp stones and through thorns, and the wild beasts ran past her, but did her no harm.

She ran as long as her feet would go until it was almost evening, then she saw a little cottage and went into it to rest herself. Everything in the cottage was small, but neater and cleaner than can be told. There was a table on which was a white cover, and seven little plates, and on each plate a little spoon, moreover, there were seven little knives and forks, and seven little mugs. Against the wall stood seven little beds side by side, and covered with snow-white counterpanes.

Little Snow-white was so hungry and thirsty that she ate some vegetables and bread from each plate and drank a drop of wine out of each mug, for she did not wish to take all from one only. Then, as she was so tired, she laid herself down on one of the little beds, but none of them suited her, one was too long, another too short, but at last she found that the seventh one was right, and so she remained in it, said a prayer and went to sleep.

When it was quite dark the owners of the cottage came back. They were seven dwarfs who dug and delved in the mountains for ore. They lit their seven candles, and as it was now light within the cottage they saw that someone had been there, for everything was not in the same order in which they had left it.

The first said, who has been sitting on my chair.

The second, who has been eating off my plate.

The third, who has been taking some of my bread.

The fourth, who has been eating my vegetables.

The fifth, who has been using my fork.

The sixth, who has been cutting with my knife.

The seventh, who has been drinking out of my mug.

Then the first looked round and saw that there was a little hollow on his bed, and he said, who has been getting into my bed. The others came up and each called out, somebody has been lying in my bed too. But the seventh when he looked at his bed saw little Snow-white, who was lying asleep therein. And he called the others, who came running up, and they cried out with astonishment, and brought their seven little candles and let the light fall on little Snow-white. Oh, heavens, oh, heavens, cried they, what a lovely child. And they were so glad that they did not wake her up, but let her sleep on in the bed. And the seventh dwarf slept with his companions, one hour with each, and so passed the night.

When it was morning little Snow-white awoke, and was frightened when she saw the seven dwarfs. But they were friendly and asked her what her name was. My name is snow-white, she answered. How have you come to our house, said the dwarfs. Then she told them that her step-mother had wished to have her killed, but that the huntsman had spared her life, and that she had run for the whole day, until at last she had found their dwelling.

The dwarfs said, if you will take care of our house, cook, make the beds, wash, sew and knit, and if you will keep everything neat and clean you can stay with us and you shall want for nothing. Yes, said Snow-white, with all my heart. And she stayed with them. She kept the house in order for them. In the mornings they went to the mountains and looked for copper and gold, in the evenings they came back, and then their supper had to be ready. The girl was alone the whole day, so the good dwarfs warned her and said, beware of your step-mother, she will soon know that you are here, be sure to let no one come in.

But the queen, believing that she had eaten Snow-white's lung and liver, could not but think that she was again the first and most beautiful of all, and she went to her looking-glass and said,

looking-glass, looking-glass, on the wall,  
who in this land is the fairest of all.

And the glass answered, oh, queen,  
thou art fairest of all I see,  
but over the hills, where the seven dwarfs dwell,  
Snow-white is still alive and well,  
and none is so fair as she.

Then she was astounded, for she knew that the looking-glass never spoke falsely, and she knew that the huntsman had betrayed her, and that little Snow-white was still alive.

And so she thought and thought again how she might kill her, for so long as she was not the fairest in the whole land, envy let her have no rest. And when she had at last thought of something to do, she painted her face, and dressed

herself like an old pedlar-woman, and no one could have known her. In this disguise she went over the seven mountains to the seven dwarfs, and knocked at the door and cried, pretty things to sell, very cheap, very cheap. Little Snow-white looked out of the window and called out, good-day my good woman, what have you to sell. Good things, pretty things, she answered, stay-laces of all colors, and she pulled out one which was woven of bright-colored silk. I may let the worthy old woman in, thought Snow-white, and she unbolted the door and bought the pretty laces. Child, said the old woman, what a fright you look, come, I will lace you properly for once. Snow-white had no suspicion, but stood before her, and let herself be laced with the new laces. But the old woman laced so quickly and so tightly that snow-white lost her breath and fell down as if dead. Now I am the most beautiful, said the queen to herself, and ran away.

Not long afterwards, in the evening, the seven dwarfs came home, but how shocked they were when they saw their dear little Snow-white lying on the ground, and that she neither stirred nor moved, and seemed to be dead. They lifted her up, and, as they saw that she was laced too tightly, they cut the laces, then she began to breathe a little, and after a while came to life again. When the dwarfs heard what had happened they said, the old pedlar-woman was no one else than the wicked queen, take care and let no one come in when we are not with you.

But the wicked woman when she had reached home went in front of the glass and asked,

looking-glass, looking-glass, on the wall,  
who in this land is the fairest of all.

And it answered as before,  
oh, queen, thou art fairest of all I see,  
but over the hills, where the seven dwarfs dwell,  
Snow-white is still alive and well,  
and none is so fair as she.

When she heard that, all her blood rushed to her heart with fear, for she saw plainly that little Snow-white was again alive. But now, she said, I will think of something that shall really put an end to you. And by the help of witchcraft, which she understood, she made a poisonous comb. Then she disguised herself and took the shape of another old woman. So she went over the seven mountains to the seven dwarfs, knocked at the door, and cried, good things to sell, cheap, cheap. Little Snow-white looked out and said, go away, I cannot let anyone come in. I suppose you can look, said the old woman, and pulled the poisonous comb out and held it up. It pleased the girl so well that she let herself be beguiled, and opened the door. When they had made a bargain the old woman said, now I will comb you properly for once. Poor little Snow-white had no suspicion, and let the old woman do as she pleased, but hardly had she put the comb in her hair than the poison in it took effect, and the girl fell down senseless. You paragon of beauty, said the wicked woman, you are done for now, and she went away.

But fortunately it was almost evening, when the seven dwarfs came home. When they saw Snow-white lying as if dead upon the ground they at once suspected the step-mother, and they looked and found the poisoned comb. Scarcely had they taken it out when Snow-white came to herself, and told them what had happened. Then they warned her once more to be upon her guard and to open the door to no one.

The queen, at home, went in front of the glass and said,

looking-glass, looking-glass, on the wall,  
who in this land is the fairest of all.

Then it answered as before,  
oh, queen, thou art fairest of all I see,  
but over the hills, where the seven dwarfs dwell,  
Snow-white is still alive and well,  
and none is so fair as she.

When she heard the glass speak thus she trembled and shook with rage. Snow-white shall die, she cried, even if it costs me my life.

Thereupon she went into a quite secret, lonely room, where no one ever came, and there she made a very poisonous apple. Outside it looked pretty, white with a red cheek, so that everyone who saw it longed for it, but whoever ate a piece of it must surely die.

When the apple was ready she painted her face, and dressed herself up as a farmer's wife, and so she went over the seven mountains to the seven dwarfs. She knocked at the door. Snow-white put her head out of the window and said, I cannot let anyone in, the seven dwarfs have forbidden me. It is all the same to me, answered the woman, I shall soon get rid of my apples. There, I will give you one.

No, said snow-white, I dare not take anything. Are you afraid of poison, said the old woman, look, I will cut the apple in two pieces, you eat the red cheek, and I will eat the white. The apple was so cunningly made that only the red cheek was poisoned. Snow-white longed for the fine apple, and when she saw that the woman ate part of it she could resist no longer, and stretched out her hand and took the poisonous half. But hardly had she a bit of it in her mouth than she fell down dead. Then the queen looked at her with a dreadful look, and laughed aloud and said, white as snow, red as blood, black as ebony-wood, this time the dwarfs cannot wake you up again. And when she asked of the looking-glass at home,

looking-glass, looking-glass, on the wall,  
who in this land is the fairest of all.

And it answered at last,  
oh, queen, in this land thou art fairest of all.

Then her envious heart had rest, so far as an envious heart can have rest.

The dwarfs, when they came home in the evening, found Snow-white lying upon the ground, she breathed no longer and was dead. They lifted her up, looked to see whether they could find anything poisonous, unlaced her, combed her hair, washed her with water and wine, but it was all of no use, the poor child was dead, and remained dead. They laid her upon a bier, and all seven of them sat round it and wept for her, and wept three days long.

Then they were going to bury her, but she still looked as if she were living, and still had her pretty red cheeks. They said, we could not bury her in the dark ground, and they had a transparent coffin of glass made, so that she could be seen from all sides, and they laid her in it, and wrote her name upon it in golden letters, and that she was a king's daughter. Then they put the coffin out upon the mountain, and one of them always stayed by it and watched it. And birds came too, and wept for Snow-white, first an owl, then a raven, and last a dove.

And now Snow-white lay a long, long time in the coffin, and she did not change, but looked as if she were asleep, for she was as white as snow, as red as blood, and her hair was as black as ebony.

It happened, however, that a king's son came into the forest, and went to the dwarfs, house to spend the night. He saw the coffin on the mountain, and the beautiful Snow-white within it, and read what was written upon it in golden letters. Then he said to the dwarfs, let me have the coffin, I will give you whatever you want for it. But the dwarfs answered, we will not part with it for all the gold in the world. Then he said, let me have it as a gift, for I cannot live without seeing snow-white. I will honor and prize her as my dearest possession. As he spoke in this way the good dwarfs took pity upon him, and gave him the coffin.

And now the king's son had it carried away by his servants on their shoulders. And it happened that they stumbled over a tree-stump, and with the shock the poisonous piece of apple which Snow-white had bitten off came out of her throat. And before long she opened her eyes, lifted up the lid of the coffin, sat up, and was once more alive. Oh, heavens, where am I, she cried. The king's son, full of joy, said, you are with me. And told her what had happened, and said, I love you more than everything in the world, come with me to my father's palace, you shall be my wife.

And snow-white was willing, and went with him, and their wedding was held with great show and splendor. But Snow-white's wicked step-mother was also bidden to the feast. When she had arrayed herself in beautiful clothes she went before the looking-glass, and said,

looking-glass, looking-glass, on the wall,  
who in this land is the fairest of all.

The glass answered,  
oh, queen, of all here the fairest art thou,  
but the young queen is fairer by far as I trow.

Then the wicked woman uttered a curse, and was so wretched, so utterly wretched that she knew not what to do. At first she would not go to the wedding at all, but she had no peace, and had to go to see the young queen. And when she went in she recognized Snow-white, and she stood still with rage and fear, and could not stir. But iron slippers had already been put upon the fire, and they were brought in with tongs, and set before her. Then she was forced to put on the red-hot shoes, and dance until she dropped down dead.

## *The Little Red Hen*

One day as the Little Red Hen was scratching in a field, she found a grain of wheat.

"This wheat should be planted," she said. "Who will plant this grain of wheat ?"

"Not I," said the Duck.

"Not I," said the Cat.

"Not I," said the Dog.

"Then I will," said the Little Red Hen. And she did.

Soon the wheat grew to be tall and yellow.

"The wheat is ripe," said the Little Red Hen. "Who will cut the wheat ?"

"Not I," said the Duck.

"Not I," said the Cat.

"Not I." said the Dog.

"Then I will," said the Little Red Hen. And she did.

When the wheat was cut, the Little Red Hen said, "Who will thresh this wheat ?"

"Not I," said the Duck.

"Not I," said the Cat.

"Not I," said the Dog.

"Then I will," said the Little Red Hen.' And she did.

When the wheat was all threshed, the Little Red Hen said, "Who'll take this wheat to the mill?"

"Not I," said the Duck.

"Not I," said the Cat.

"Not I," said the Dog.

"Then I will," said the Little Red Hen. And she did.

She took the wheat to the mill and had it ground into flour. Then she said,

"Who will make this flour into bread ?"

"Not I," said the, Duck.

"Not I," said the Cat.

"Not I," said the Dog.

"Then I will," said the Little Red Hen. And she did.

She made and baked the bread. Then she said, "Who will eat this bread ?"

"Oh! I will," said the Duck.

"And I will," said the Cat.

"And I will," said the Dog.

"No, no!" said the Little Red Hen. "I will do that." And she did.



## *The Three Little Pigs*

### ➤ Vocabulary

#### ○ Nouns

- Pig—cochon
- Wolf—loup
- Meadow--pré
- Straw=haw-foin
- Stick--morceau
- Brick--brique
- Chimney--cheminée
- Chin-menton
- Grass-herbe
- Roof--toit

#### ○ Adjectives

- Strong--fort
- Weak--faible
- First--premier
- Second--deuxième
- Third—troisième
- Lazy—paresseux
- Smart—intelligent
- Cozy--comfortable

#### ○ Verbs

- To huff—haleter
- To puff—haleter
- To blow--souffler
- To boil—faire bouillir
- To wave—saluer
- To knock--frapper
- To invite--inviter
- To hide--cacher
- To climb—grimper

Once upon a time, there were three little pigs who lived with their mother in a meadow. One day their mother said, "You need to go out into the world and make your own way." So they waved "goodbye" and left to build their own houses.

The first little pig was very lazy. He decided to build his house out of straw, which was not very strong. When the house was finished, the big bad wolf knocked on the door and said, "Little pig, little pig, let me come in."

"Not by the hair of my chinny chin chin," said the first little pig.

"Then I'll huff and I'll puff, and I'll blow your house down." And he did. He huffed, and he puffed, and he blew the house down.

The second little pig thought to himself, "I will be smarter. I will build my house out of sticks. That should be easy and safe." But, sticks are not very strong. One day, the big bad wolf came and said, "Little pig, little pig, let me come in."

"Not by the hair of my chinny chin chin," said the second little pig.

"Then I'll huff and I'll puff and I'll blow your house down," said the wolf. And he did. He huffed, and he puffed, and he blew the house down.

The first little pig and the second little pig ran to hide at the third little pig's house. The third little pig had built his house out of bricks, which are very strong. The first little pig said, "Oh. You are the smartest of us all." One day the wolf came by and knocked. "Little pig, little pig, let me come in, said the big bad wolf."

"Not by the hair on our chinny, chin, chins," said the pigs.

"Then I'll huff and I'll puff and I'll blow your house down," said the wolf. And he did. He huffed, and he puffed, but the house did not fall down.

The big bad wolf said to himself, "This cannot be. I will climb onto the roof, go down the chimney, and eat those pigs." But when the wolf came down the chimney, he fell into a pot of boiling water. "Ow," he yelled. He ran away and never came back.

The third little pig invited the first little pig and the second little pig to live with him in his cozy brick house. The three little pigs visited their mother every Sunday and they all lived happily ever after.

- Questions

- What did the first little pig use to make his house? The second little pig? The third little pig?
- What did the big bad wolf do to ruin the houses?
- Why didn't the third little pig's house fall down?
- What happened when the wolf went down the chimney?

## Songs

### ***Today was a Fairytale***

By Taylor Swift

Today was a fairytale  
You were the prince  
I used to be a damsel in distress  
You took me by the hand and you picked me up at six  
Today was a fairytale  
Today was a fairytale

Today was a fairytale  
I wore a dress  
You wore a dark grey t-shirt  
You told me I was pretty  
When I looked like a mess  
Today was a fairytale

Time slows down  
Whenever you're around

Can you feel this magic in the air?  
It must have been the way you kissed me  
Fell in love when I saw you standing there  
It must have been the way  
Today was a fairytale

It must have been the way  
Today was a fairytale

Today was a fairytale  
You've got a smile that takes me to another planet  
Every move you make everything you say is right  
Today was a fairytale

Today was a fairytale  
All that I can say  
Is now it's getting so much clearer  
Nothing made sense until the time I saw your face  
Today was a fairytale

Time slows down  
Whenever you're around  
Yeah yeah

But can you feel this magic in the air?  
It must have been the way you kissed me  
Fell in love when I saw you standing there  
It must have been the way  
Today was a fairytale  
It must have been the way

Today was a fairytale

[Instrumental]

Time slows down  
Whenever you're around  
I can feel my heart  
It's beating in my chest  
Did you feel it?  
I can't put this down

But can you feel this magic in the air?  
It must have been the way you kissed me  
Fell in love when I saw you standing there  
It must have been the way

But can you feel this magic in the air?  
It must have been the way you kissed me  
Fell in love when I saw you standing there  
It must have been the way  
Today was a fairytale  
It must have been the way  
Today was a fairytale  
Oh, oh, oh, oh, yeah, yeah, oh, oh  
Today was a fairytale

"Today Was A Fairytale" by Taylor Swift

Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale  
You \_\_\_\_\_ the prince  
I \_\_\_\_\_ to be a damsel in distress  
You \_\_\_\_\_ me by the hand and you  
\_\_\_\_\_ me up at six  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale

Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale  
I \_\_\_\_\_ a dress  
You \_\_\_\_\_ a dark grey t-shirt  
You \_\_\_\_\_ me I was pretty  
When I \_\_\_\_\_ like a mess  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale

Time slows down  
Whenever you're around

Can you feel this magic in the air?  
It must have been the way you kissed me  
\_\_\_\_\_ in love when I saw you standing there

It must have been the way  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale

It must have been the way  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale

Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale  
You've got a smile that takes me to another planet  
Every move you make everything you say is right  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale

Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale  
All that I can say  
Is now it's getting so much clearer  
Nothing \_\_\_\_\_ sense until the time I  
\_\_\_\_\_ your face

Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale

Time slows down  
Whenever you're around  
Yeah yeah

But can you feel this magic in the air?  
It must have been the way you kissed me  
\_\_\_\_\_ in love when I saw you standing there

It must have been the way  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale  
It must have been the way  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale

[Instrumental]

Time slows down  
Whenever you're around

I can feel my heart  
It's beating in my chest  
Did you feel it?  
I can't put this down

But can you feel this magic in the air?  
It must have been the way you kissed me  
\_\_\_\_\_ in love when I saw you standing there  
It must have been the way

But can you feel this magic in the air?  
It must have been the way you kissed me  
\_\_\_\_\_ in love when I saw you standing there

It must have been the way  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale  
It must have been the way  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale  
Oh, oh, oh, oh, yeah, yeah, oh, oh  
Today \_\_\_\_\_ a fairytale

## ***Rock Around the Clock***

One, two, three o'clock, four o'clock rock  
Five, six, seven o'clock, eight o'clock rock  
Nine, ten, eleven o'clock, twelve o'clock rock  
We're gonna rock around the clock tonight

Put your glad rags on and join me hon'  
We'll have some fun when the clock strikes one  
We're gonna rock around the clock tonight  
We're gonna rock, rock, rock, 'till broad daylight  
We're gonna rock, gonna rock around the clock tonight

When the clock strikes two, three and four  
If the band slows down we'll yell for more  
We're gonna rock around the clock tonight  
We're gonna rock, rock, rock, 'till broad daylight  
We're gonna rock, gonna rock around the clock tonight

When the chimes ring five, six, and seven  
We'll be right in seventh heaven  
We're gonna rock around the clock tonight  
We're gonna rock, rock, rock, 'till broad daylight  
We're gonna rock, gonna rock around the clock tonight

When it's eight, nine, ten, eleven too  
I'll be goin' strong and so will you  
We're gonna rock around the clock tonight  
We're gonna rock, rock, rock, 'till broad daylight  
We're gonna rock, gonna rock around the clock tonight

When the clock strikes twelve we'll cool off then  
Start rockin' 'round the clock again  
We're gonna rock around the clock tonight  
We're gonna rock, rock, rock, 'till broad daylight  
We're gonna rock, gonna rock around the clock tonight

## ***We Are the World***

There comes a time when we heed a certain call  
When the world must come together as one  
There are people dying  
And it's time to lend a hand to life  
The greatest gift of all

We can't go on pretending day by day  
That someone, somewhere will soon make a change  
We all are a part of God's great big family  
And the truth, you know,  
Love is all we need

[Chorus:]

We are the world, we are the children  
We are the ones who make a brighter day  
So let's start giving  
There's a choice we're making  
We're saving our own lives  
It's true we'll make a better day  
Just you and me

Send them your heart so they'll know that someone cares  
And their lives will be stronger and free  
As God has shown us by turning stone to bread  
So we all must lend a helping hand

[Chorus]

When you're down and out, there seems no hope at all  
But if you just believe there's no way we can fall  
Well...well...well  
Let's realize that a change can only come  
When we stand together as one

[Chorus]

### ➤ Vocabulary

- To come—venir
- To lend—
- To pretend—prétendre
- To give—donner
- To save—sauver
- To lend a hand—to help—aider
- To send—envoyer
- To care—
- To turn—
- To show—montrer
- To seem—sembler
- To believe—croire
- To fall—tomber

- To realise—réaliser
  
- Down and out=sad
- Certain—certain
- Together—ensemble
- Bright—clair
- Strong—fort
- Free-libre
- World—monde
- Life—vie
- Gift—cadeau
- Someone—quelqu'un
- Somewhere—quelque part
- A part—
- Truth—vérité
- Love—amour
- Soon—
- Choice—choix
- Heart—coeur
- Stone—
- Bread—pain
- A hope—un espoir

## ***Brave***

You can be amazing  
You can turn a phrase into a weapon or a drug  
You can be the outcast  
Or be the backlash of somebody's lack of love  
Or you can start speaking up

Nothing's gonna hurt you the way that words do  
When they settle 'neath your skin  
Kept on the inside and no sunlight  
Sometimes a shadow wins  
But I wonder what would happen if you

Say what you wanna say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave  
With what you want to say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave

I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I wanna see you be brave

I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I wanna see you be brave

Everybody's been there,  
Everybody's been stared down by the enemy  
Fallen for the fear  
And done some disappearing,  
Bow down to the mighty  
Don't run, just stop holding your tongue

Maybe there's a way out of the cage where you live  
Maybe one of these days you can let the light in  
Show me how big your brave is

Say what you wanna say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave  
With what you want to say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave

And since your history of silence  
Won't do you any good,  
Did you think it would?  
Let your words be anything but empty



Why don't you tell them the truth?

Say what you wanna say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave  
With what you want to say  
And let the words fall out  
Honestly I wanna see you be brave

I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I wanna see you be brave

I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
See you be brave

I just wanna see you (yeah)  
I just wanna see you (oh ooh)  
I just wanna see you

I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you  
I just wanna see you

## ***ABC***

You went to school to learn girl  
Things you never, never knew before  
Like I before E except after C  
And why two plus two makes four  
Now now now, I'm gonna teach you  
Teach you, teach you  
All about love, dear  
All about love  
Sit yourself down, take a seat  
All you gotta do is repeat after me.  
ABC  
Easy as  
One, two, three  
Or simple as  
Do re mi  
ABC, one, two, three, baby, you and me girl!  
ABC  
Easy as  
One, two, three  
Or simple as  
Do re mi  
ABC, one, two, three, baby, you and me!  
Come on, let me love you just a little bit!  
Come on, let me love you just a little bit!  
I'm a going to teach how to sing it out!  
Michael: Come on, come on, come on  
Let me show you what it's all about!  
Reading, writing and arithmetic  
Are the branches of the learning tree  
But without the roots of love every day, girl  
Your education ain't complete  
T-T-T-Teacher's gonna show you  
Show you, show you  
How to get an A!  
Nyah nyah nyah nyah nyah nyah!  
Spell "me" "you"  
Add the two!  
Listen to me baby, that's all you gotta do!  
Oh, ABC  
As easy as  
One, two, three  
Or simple as  
Do re mi  
ABC, one, two, three, baby, you and me girl!  
ABC  
It's easy,  
It's like counting up to three (One, two, three)  
Sing a simple melody (Do re mi, ABC)  
That's how easy love can be!  
Sit down, girl!  
I think I love you!  
No!

Get up, girl!  
Show me what you can do!  
Shake it, shake it, baby, come on now!  
Shake it, shake it, baby, ooh ooh!  
Shake it shake it, baby, huh!  
One, two, three, baby, ooh ooh!  
ABC, baby, nah nah!  
Do re mi, baby, huh!  
That's how easy love can be.  
ABC, it's easy  
It's like counting up to three (One, two, three)  
Sing a simple melody (Do re mi, ABC)  
That's how easy love can be!  
(I'm not gonna teach you how to sing it out)  
Come on come on come on let me show you what it's all about  
ABC, it's easy  
It's like counting up to three (One, two, three)  
Sing a simple melody (Do re mi, ABC)  
That's how easy love can be!  
(I'm not gonna teach you how to sing it out)  
Sing it out, sing it, sing it, sing it  
Oh baby, ABC, it's easy  
It's like counting up to three (One, two, three)  
Sing a simple melody (Do re mi, ABC)  
That's how easy love can be!

## *If Tomorrow Never Comes*

Ronan Keating

### ➤ Vocabulary

- Peaceful—paisible/tranquille
- To turn off/out—éteindre
- To doubt—douter
- To feel-ressentir
- To try—essayer
- Regret—regret
- To reveal—révéler
- Promise—promesse
- To mean/To matter—importer
- Circumstance—circumstance
- Chance--chances

Sometimes late at night  
I lie awake and watch her sleeping  
She's lost in peaceful dreams  
So I turn out the lights and lay there in the dark  
And the thought crosses my mind  
If I never wake up in the morning  
Would she ever doubt the way I feel  
About her in my heart

If tomorrow never comes  
Will she know how much I loved her  
Did I try in every way to show her every day  
That she's my only one  
And if my time on earth were through  
And she must face this world without me  
Is the love I gave her in the past  
Gonna be enough to last  
If tomorrow never comes

'Cause I've lost loved ones in my life  
Who never knew how much I loved them  
Now I live with the regret  
That my true feelings for them never were revealed  
So I made a promise to myself  
To say each day how much she means to me  
And avoid that circumstance  
Where there's no second chance to tell her how I feel

If tomorrow never comes  
Will she know how much I loved her  
Did I try in every way to show her every day  
That she's my only one  
And if my time on earth were through  
And she must face this world without me  
Is the love I gave her in the past  
Gonna be enough to last  
If tomorrow never comes

So tell that someone that you love  
Just what you're thinking of  
If tomorrow never comes

## ***A Spoonful of Sugar***

In every job that must be done  
There is an element of fun  
you find the fun and snap!  
The job's a game

And every task you undertake  
Becomes a piece of cake  
A lark! A spree!  
It's very clear to see

That a...  
Spoonful of sugar helps the medicine go down  
The medicine go dow-own  
The medicine go down  
Just a spoonful of sugar helps the medicine go down  
In a most delightful way

A robin feathering his nest  
Has very little time to rest  
While gathering his  
Bits of twine and twig

Though quite intent in his pursuit  
He has a merry tune to toot  
He knows a song  
Will move the job along

For a...  
Spoonful of sugar helps the medicine go down  
The medicine go down  
The medicine go down  
Just a spoonful of sugar helps the medicine go down  
In a most delightful way



## ***Circle of Life***

Nants ingonyama bagithi Baba  
Sithi uhm ingonyama  
Ingonyama  
Nants ingonyama bagithi Baba  
Sithi uhmm ingonyama  
Ingonyama  
Siyo nqoba  
Ingonyama  
Ingonyama nengw' enamabala

From the day we arrive on the planet  
And blinking, step into the sun  
There's more to see than can ever be seen  
More to do than can ever be done

There's far too much to take in here  
More to find than can ever be found  
But the sun rolling high  
Through the sapphire sky  
Keeps great and small on the endless round

It's the Circle of Life  
And it moves us all  
Through despair and hope  
Through faith and love

Till we find our place  
On the path unwinding  
In the Circle  
The Circle of Life

It's the Circle of Life  
And it moves us all  
Through despair and hope  
Through faith and love

Till we find our place  
On the path unwinding  
In the Circle  
The Circle of Life



## ***Do-Ri-Me***

Let's start at the very beginning  
A very good place to start  
When you read you begin with A-B-C  
When you sing you begin with do-re-mi

Do-re-mi, do-re-mi  
The first three notes just happen to be  
Do-re-mi, do-re-mi

[Maria:]  
Do-re-mi-fa-so-la-ti  
[spoken]  
Let's see if I can make it easier

Doe, a deer, a female deer  
Ray, a drop of golden sun  
Me, a name I call myself  
Far, a long, long way to run  
Sew, a needle pulling thread  
La, a note to follow Sew  
Tea, a drink with jam and bread  
That will bring us back to Do (oh-oh-oh)

[Maria and Children:]  
[Repeat above verse twice]

[Maria:]  
Do-re-mi-fa-so-la-ti-do  
So-do!

[Maria: (spoken)]  
Now children, do-re-mi-fa-so and so on  
are only the tools we use to build a song.  
Once you have these notes in your heads,  
you can sing a million different tunes by mixing them up.  
Like this.

So Do La Fa Mi Do Re  
[spoken]

Can you do that?

[Children:]  
So Do La Fa Mi Do Re

[Maria:]  
So Do La Ti Do Re Do

[Children:]  
So Do La Ti Do Re Do

[Maria:]  
[spoken]  
Now, put it all together.

[Maria and Children:]  
So Do La Fa Mi Do Re, So Do La Ti Do Re Do

[Maria:]

[spoken]

Good!

[Brigitta:]

[spoken]

But it doesn't mean anything.

[Maria:]

[spoken]

So we put in words. One word for every note. Like this.

When you know the notes to sing

You can sing most anything

[spoken]

Together!

[Maria and Children:]

When you know the notes to sing

You can sing most anything

Doe, a deer, a female deer

Ray, a drop of golden sun

Me, a name I call myself

Far, a long, long way to run

Sew, a needle pulling thread

La, a note to follow Sew

Tea, a drink with jam and bread

That will bring us back to Do

Do Re Mi Fa So La Ti Do

Do Ti La So Fa Mi Re

[Children:]

Do Mi Mi

Mi So So

Re Fa Fa

La Ti Ti

[Repeat above verse 4x as Maria sings]

[Maria:]

When you know the notes to sing

You can sing most anything

[Maria and Children:]

Doe, a deer, a female deer

Ray, a drop of golden sun

Me, a name I call myself

Far, a long, long way to run

Sew, a needle pulling thread

La, a note to follow Sew

Tea, a drink with jam and bread

That will bring us back to

[Maria:]

[Children:]

Do . . . So Do  
Re . . . La Fa  
Mi . . . Mi Do  
Fa . . . Re  
So . . . So Do  
La . . . La Fa  
Ti . . . La So Fa Mi Re  
Ti Do - oh - oh Ti Do -- So Do

## ***Let's Go Fly a Kite***

Mr. Banks:

With tuppence for paper and strings  
You can have your own set of wings  
With your feet on the ground  
You're a bird in a flight  
With your fist holding tight  
To the string of your kite

Oh, oh, oh!

Let's go fly a kite

Up to the highest height!

Let's go fly a kite and send it soaring

Up through the atmosphere

Up where the air is clear

Oh, let's go fly a kite!

Bert:

When you send it flyin' up there

All at once you're lighter than air

You can dance on the breeze

Over 'ouses and trees

With your first 'olding tight

To the string of your kite

Londoners:

Oh, oh, oh!

Let's go fly a kite

Up to the highest height!

Let's go fly a kite and send it soaring

Up through the atmosphere

Up where the air is clear

Let's go fly a kite!

## ***My Favorite Things***

Raindrops on roses and whiskers on kittens,  
bright copper kettles and warm woolen mittens,  
brown paper packages tied up with strings,  
these are a few of my favorite things.

Cream colored ponies and crisp apple strudels,  
door bells and sleigh bells and schnitzel with noodles.  
Wild geese that fly with the moon on their wings.  
these are a few of my favorite things.

Girls in white dresses with blue satin sashes,  
snowflakes that stay on my nose and eyelashes,  
silver white winters that melt into springs,  
these are a few of my favorite things.

When the dog bites, when the bee stings,  
when I'm feeling sad,  
I simply remember my favorite things,  
and then I don't feel so bad.

Raindrops on roses and whiskers on kittens,  
bright copper kettles and warm woolen mittens,  
brown paper packages tied up with strings,  
these are a few of my favorite things.

Cream colored ponies and crisp apple strudels,  
door bells and sleigh bells and schnitzel with noodles.  
Wild geese that fly with the moon on their wings.  
these are a few of my favorite things.

Girls in white dresses with blue satin sashes,  
snowflakes that stay on my nose and eyelashes,  
silver white winters that melt into springs,  
these are a few of my favorite things.

When the dog bites, when the bee stings,  
when I'm feeling sad,  
I simply remember my favorite things,  
and then I don't feel so bad.

## ***Sixteen Going on Seventeen***

[Rolf:]

You wait, little girl, on an empty stage  
For fate to turn the light on  
Your life, little girl, is an empty page  
That men will want to write on

[Liesl:]

To write on

[Rolf:]

You are sixteen going on seventeen  
Baby, it's time to think  
Better beware, be canny and careful  
Baby, you're on the brink

You are sixteen going on seventeen  
Fellows will fall in line  
Eager young lads and rogues and cads  
Will offer you food and wine

Totally unprepared are you  
To face a world of men  
Timid and shy and scared are you  
Of things beyond your ken

You need someone older and wiser  
Telling you what to do  
I am seventeen going on eighteen  
I'll take care of you

[Liesl:]

I am sixteen going on seventeen  
I know that I'm naive  
Fellows I meet may tell me I'm sweet  
And willingly I believe

I am sixteen going on seventeen  
Innocent as a rose  
Bachelor dandies, drinkers of brandies  
What do I know of those

Totally unprepared am I  
To face a world of men  
Timid and shy and scared am I  
Of things beyond my ken

I need someone older and wiser  
Telling me what to do  
You are seventeen going on eighteen  
I'll depend on you

## ***Supercalifragilisticexpialidocious***

It's supercalifragilisticexpialidocious  
Even though the sound of it is something quite atrocious  
If you say it loud enough, you'll always sound precocious  
Supercalifragilisticexpialidocious

Um diddle, diddle diddle, um diddle ay  
Um diddle, diddle diddle, um diddle ay  
Um diddle, diddle diddle, um diddle ay  
Um diddle, diddle diddle, um diddle ay

Because I was afraid to speak  
When I was just a lad  
My father gave me nose a tweak  
And told me I was bad

But then one day I learned a word  
That saved me achin' nose  
The biggest word I ever heard  
And this is how it goes, oh

Supercalifragilisticexpialidocious  
Even though the sound of it is something quite atrocious  
If you say it loud enough, you'll always sound precocious  
Supercalifragilisticexpialidocious

Um diddle, diddle diddle, um diddle ay  
Um diddle, diddle diddle, um diddle ay  
Um diddle, diddle diddle, um diddle ay  
Um diddle, diddle diddle, um diddle ay

He traveled all around the world  
And everywhere he went  
He'd use his word and all would say  
There goes a clever gent

When Dukes and Maharajahs  
Pass the time of day with me  
I say me special word  
And then they ask me out to tea

Oh, supercalifragilisticexpialidocious  
Even though the sound of it is something quite atrocious  
If you say it loud enough, you'll always sound precocious  
Supercalifragilisticexpialidocious

Um diddle, diddle diddle, um diddle ay  
Um diddle, diddle diddle, um diddle ay

No, you can say it backwards, which is dociousaliexpilisticfragicalirupus  
But that's going a bit too far, don't you think?

So when the cat has got your tongue  
There's no need for dismay  
Just summon up this word  
And then you've got a lot to say

But better use it carefully  
Or it could change your life  
For example, yes, one night I said it to me girl  
And now me girl's my wife, oh, and a lovely thing she's too

She's, supercalifragilisticexpialidocious  
Supercalifragilisticexpialidocious  
Supercalifragilisticexpialidocious  
Supercalifragilisticexpialidocious



## ***The Lion Sleeps Tonight***

Lala kahle [Sleep well]

In the jungle, the mighty jungle  
The lion sleeps tonight  
In the jungle, the mighty jungle  
The lion sleeps tonight

(Chorus)

Imbube

Ingonyama ifile [The lion's in peace]  
Ingonyama ilele [The lion sleeps]  
Thula [Hush]

Near the village, the peaceful village  
The lion sleeps tonight  
Near the village, the peaceful village  
The lion sleeps tonight

(Chorus)

Ingonyama ilele [The lion sleeps]

Hush, my darling, don't fear, my darling  
The lion sleeps tonight  
Hush, my darling, don't fear, my darling  
The lion sleeps tonight

He, ha hehelemama [He, ha hehelemama]  
Ohi'mbube [lion]

(Chorus)

Ixsha lifikile [Time has come]  
Lala [Sleep]  
Lala kahle [Sleep well]

Near the village, the peaceful village  
The lion sleeps tonight  
Near the village, the peaceful village  
The lion sleeps tonight

(Chorus)

My little darling  
Don't fear, my little darling  
My little darling  
Don't fear, my little darling

Ingonyama ilele [The lion sleeps]

## ***When You Wish Upon a Star***

When you wish upon a star  
Makes no difference who you are  
Anything your heart desires  
Will come to you.

If your heart is in your dream  
No request is too extreme  
When you wish upon a star  
As dreamers do.

Fate is kind  
She brings to those who love  
The sweet fulfillment of  
Their secret longing

Like a bolt out of the blue  
Suddenly, it comes to you  
When you wish upon a star  
Your dreams come true

When a star is born  
They possess a gift or two.  
One of them is this  
They have the power to make a wish come true.

When you wish upon a star  
Makes no difference who you are  
Anything your heart desires  
Will come to you,

If your heart is in your dream  
No request is too extreme  
When you wish upon a star  
As dreamers do.

Fate is kind  
She brings to those who love  
The sweet fulfillment of  
Their secret longing.

Like a bolt out of the blue  
Suddenly, it comes to you  
When you wish upon a star  
Your dreams come true.

## ***Let it Go***

The snow glows white on the mountain tonight  
Not a footprint to be seen  
A kingdom of isolation,  
And it looks like I'm the queen.

The wind is howling like this swirling storm inside  
Couldn't keep it in, heaven knows I tried!

Don't let them in, don't let them see  
Be the good girl you always have to be  
Conceal, don't feel, don't let them know  
Well, now they know!

Let it go, let it go  
Can't hold it back anymore  
Let it go, let it go  
Turn away and slam the door!

I don't care  
What they're going to say  
Let the storm rage on,  
The cold never bothered me anyway!

It's funny how some distance  
Makes everything seem small  
And the fears that once controlled me  
Can't get to me at all!

It's time to see what I can do  
To test the limits and break through  
No right, no wrong, no rules for me I'm free!

Let it go, let it go  
I am one with the wind and sky  
Let it go, let it go  
You'll never see me cry!

Here I stand  
And here I'll stay  
Let the storm rage on!

My power flurries through the air into the ground  
My soul is spiraling in frozen fractals all around  
And one thought crystallizes like an icy blast  
I'm never going back,  
The past is in the past!

Let it go, let it go  
And I'll rise like the break of dawn  
Let it go, let it go  
That perfect girl is gone!

Here I stand  
In the light of day  
Let the storm rage on,  
The cold never bothered me anyway!

(Everything I Do) I Do It For You"

Look into my eyes – you will see  
What you mean to me.  
Search your heart, search your soul  
And when you find me there you'll search no more.

Don't tell me it's not worth tryin' for.  
You can't tell me it's not worth dyin' for.  
You know it's true:  
Everything I do, I do it for you.

Look into your heart – you will find  
There's nothin' there to hide.  
Take me as I am, take my life.  
I would give it all, I would sacrifice.

Don't tell me it's not worth fightin' for  
I can't help it, there's nothin' I want more  
You know it's true:  
Everything I do, I do it for you, oh, yeah.

There's no love like your love  
And no other could give more love.  
There's nowhere unless you're there  
All the time, all the way, yeah.

Look into your heart, baby...

Oh, you can't tell me it's not worth tryin' for.  
I can't help it, there's nothin' I want more.

Yeah, I would fight for you, I'd lie for you,  
Walk the wire for you, yeah, I'd die for you.

You know it's true:  
Everything I do, oh, I do it for you.

Everything I do, darling.  
You will see it's true.  
You will see it's true.  
Yeah!  
Search your heart and your soul  
You can't tell it's not worth dying for  
I'll be there  
I'd walk the fire for you  
I'd die for you  
Oh, yeah.  
I'm going all the time, all the way

## ***A Life That's Good***

Verse 1:

Sittin' here tonight,  
By the fire light,  
it reminds me I already have more than I should.

I don't need fame, no one to know my name,  
at the end of the day,  
Lord I pray, I have a life that's good.

Chorus:

Two arms around me, heaven to ground me,  
and a family that always calls me home,

Four wheels to get there, enough love to share  
and a sweet sweet sweet song

At the end of the day,  
Lord I pray ,  
I have a life that's good.

Verse 2:

Sometimes I'm hard on me,  
When dreams don't come easy,  
I wanna look back and say,  
I did all that I could,

Yeah at the end of the day, Lord I pray,  
I have a life that's good.

Chorus:

Two arms around me, heaven to ground me,  
and a family that always calls me home,

Four wheels to get there, enough love to share  
and a sweet sweet sweet song

(Music Plays)

(Repeat x 2)

at the end of the day, Lord I pray  
I have a life that's good

## ***A Whole New World***

Aladdin: I can show you the world  
Shining, shimmering, splendid  
Tell me, princess, now when did  
You last let your heart decide?

Aladdin: I can open your eyes  
Take you wonder by wonder  
Over, sideways and under  
On a magic carpet ride

Aladdin: A whole new world  
A new fantastic point of view  
No one to tell us no or where to go  
Or say we're only dreaming

Princess Jasmine: A whole new world  
A dazzling place I never knew  
But when I'm way up here, it's crystal clear  
That now I'm in a whole new world with you  
Aladdin: (Now I'm in a whole new world with you)  
Princess Jasmine: Unbelievable sights  
Indescribable feelings  
Soaring, tumbling, freewheeling  
Through an endless diamond sky

Princess Jasmine: A whole new world  
Aladdin: (Don't you dare close your eyes)  
Princess Jasmine: A hundred thousand things to see  
Aladdin: (Hold your breath, it gets better)

Princess Jasmine: I'm like a shooting star  
I've come so far  
I can't go back  
To where I used to be

Aladdin: A whole new world  
Princess Jasmine: Every turn a surprise

Aladdin: With new horizons to pursue  
Princess Jasmine: Every moment red letter  
Both: I'll chase them anywhere  
There's time to spare  
Let me share this whole new world with you

Aladdin: A whole new world  
Princess Jasmine: A whole new world  
Aladdin: That's where we'll be  
Princess Jasmine: That's where we'll be  
Aladdin: A thrilling chase  
Princess Jasmine: A wondrous place  
Both: For you and me

## ***Beautiful***

Don't look at me

Every day is so wonderful  
Then suddenly it's hard to breathe.  
Now and then I get insecure  
From all the pain, I'm so ashamed.

I am beautiful no matter what they say.  
Words can't bring me down.  
I am beautiful in every single way.  
Yes, words can't bring me down... Oh no.  
So don't you bring me down today.

To all your friends you're delirious,  
So consumed in all your doom.  
Trying hard to fill the emptiness.  
The pieces gone, left the puzzle undone.  
is that the way it is?

You are beautiful no matter what they say  
Words can't bring you down...oh no  
You are beautiful in every single way  
Yes, words can't bring you down, oh, no  
So don't you bring me down today...

No matter what we do  
(no matter what we do)  
No matter what we say  
(no matter what we say)  
We're the song inside the tune  
Full of beautiful mistakes

And everywhere we go  
(and everywhere we go)  
The sun will always shine  
(the sun will always, always shine)  
And tomorrow we might wake on the other side

We are beautiful no matter what they say  
Yes, words won't bring us down, no, no  
We are beautiful in every single way  
Yes, words can't bring us down, oh, no  
So don't you bring me down today

Oh, yeah, don't you bring me down today, yeah, ooh  
Don't you bring me down ooh... today



## ***Because You Loved Me***

For all those times you stood by me  
For all the truth that you made me see  
For all the joy you brought to my life  
For all the wrong that you made right  
For every dream you made come true  
For all the love I found in you  
I'll be forever thankful baby  
You're the one who held me up  
Never let me fall  
You're the one who saw me through through it all

You were my strength when I was weak  
You were my voice when I couldn't speak  
You were my eyes when I couldn't see  
You saw the best there was in me  
Lifted me up when I couldn't reach  
You gave me faith 'coz you believed  
I'm everything I am  
Because you loved me

You gave me wings and made me fly  
You touched my hand I could touch the sky  
I lost my faith, you gave it back to me  
You said no star was out of reach  
You stood by me and I stood tall  
I had your love I had it all  
I'm grateful for each day you gave me  
Maybe I don't know that much  
But I know this much is true  
I was blessed because I was loved by you

You were my strength when I was weak  
You were my voice when I couldn't speak  
You were my eyes when I couldn't see  
You saw the best there was in me  
Lifted me up when I couldn't reach  
You gave me faith 'coz you believed  
I'm everything I am  
Because you loved me

You were always there for me  
The tender wind that carried me  
A light in the dark shining your love into my life  
You've been my inspiration  
Through the lies you were the truth  
My world is a better place because of you

You were my strength when I was weak  
You were my voice when I couldn't speak  
You were my eyes when I couldn't see  
You saw the best there was in me  
Lifted me up when I couldn't reach

You gave me faith 'coz you believed  
I'm everything I am  
Because you loved me

I'm everything I am  
Because you loved me

## ***Bye, Bye, Bye***

Don't really wanna make it tough,  
I just wanna tell you that I had enough.  
It might sound crazy,  
But it ain't no lie,  
Baby, bye, bye, bye

(Oh, Oh)  
Just hit me with the truth,  
Now, girl you're more than welcome to.  
So give me one good reason,  
Baby come on  
I live for you and me,  
And now I really come to see,  
That life would be much better once you're gone.

I know that I can't take no more  
It ain't no lie,  
I wanna see you out that door  
Baby, bye, bye, bye...  
Bye Bye  
Don't wanna be a fool for you  
Just another player in your game for two  
You may hate me but it ain't no lie,  
Baby Bye, bye, bye...  
Bye Bye  
Don't really wanna make it tough,  
I just wanna tell you that I had enough (ooh ooh)  
It might sound crazy,  
But it ain't no lie,  
Baby, bye, bye, bye

I'm giving up I know for sure  
I don't wanna be the reason for your love no more  
Bye Bye  
I'm checkin' out  
I'm signin' off  
Don't wanna be the loser and I've had enough

Don't wanna be your fool  
In this game for two  
So I'm leavin' you behind  
Bye, bye, bye...

I don't wanna make it tough (wanna make it tough)  
But I had enough  
And it ain't no lie (Bye, bye baby...)  
Bye, Bye  
Don't wanna be a fool for you  
Just another player in your game for two (I don't wanna be your fool)  
But it ain't no lie  
Baby bye, bye, bye...

Don't really wanna make it tough (don't really wanna make it tough),  
I just wanna tell you that I had enough (that I had enough).  
Might sound crazy,  
But it ain't no lie,  
Bye, bye, bye

## *Change*

What you're gonna do with the 36 cents  
Sticky with coke on your floorboard  
When a woman on the street is huddled in the cold  
On a sidewalk bench trying to keep warm  
Do you call her over, hand her the change  
Ask her her story, ask her her name  
Or do you tell yourself

"You're just a fool, just a fool to believe you can change the world"  
"You're just a fool, just a fool to believe you can change the world"

What you're gonna do when you're watching TV  
And an ad comes on, yeah, you know the kind  
Flashing up pictures of a child in need  
For a dime a day, you could save a life  
Do you call the number, reach out a hand  
Or do you change the channel, call it a scam  
Do you tell yourself

"You're just a fool, just a fool to believe you can change the world"  
Don't listen to them when they say  
"You're just a fool, just a fool to believe you can change the world"  
Oh, the smallest thing can make all the difference  
Love is alive, don't listen to them when they say  
"You're just a fool, just a fool to believe you can change the world"

The world's so big, it can break your heart  
And you just want to help, not sure where to start  
So you close your eyes  
And send up a prayer into the dark

"You're just a fool, just a fool to believe you can change the world"  
Don't listen to them when they say  
"You're just a fool, just a fool to believe you can change the world"  
Oh, the smallest thing can make all the difference  
Love is alive, don't listen to them when they say  
"You're just a fool, just a fool to believe you can change the world"

